



Forest Stewardship Council®



# The FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of the Republic of Uganda

March 2018




FSC International Center GmbH · [ic.fsc.org](http://ic.fsc.org) · FSC® F000100  
Adenauerallee 134 · 53113 Bonn · Germany  
T +49 (0) 228 367 66 0 · F +49 (0) 228 367 66 30  
Geschäftsführer | Director: Dr. Hans-Joachim Droste  
Handelsregister | Commercial Register: Bonn HRB12589



# **The FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of the Republic of Uganda**

---

**March 2018**

<b>Title</b>	<b>The FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of the Republic of Uganda</b>
Document reference code:	FSC-STD-UGA-01-2017 All forest types and scales EN
Status:	Approved
Geographical Scope:	National
Forest Scope:	All forest types and scales (including forest plantations and natural forests i.e. tropical moist forests and woodlands)
Approval body:	Policy and Standards Committee
Submission date:	7 July 2016
Approval date:	27 April 2017
Effective from:	1 September 2018
Validity period:	5 (five) years starting from the effectiveness date
Country contact:	<p>Mr. Edward Kosia Mupada  Havilah Company Limited;  Plot 433 Balintuma Road;  P. O. Box 6871, Kampala  <a href="mailto:edward.mupada@gmail.com">edward.mupada@gmail.com</a></p> <p>Mr Gaster Kawuubye Kiyingi;  c/o Environmental Alert  Plot 475/523 Sonko Lane, Kabalagala, Off Ggaba Road  P.O.Box 11259, Kampala, Uganda  <a href="mailto:gkiyingi@treetalkplus.org">gkiyingi@treetalkplus.org</a>; <a href="mailto:gasterk@yahoo.com">gasterk@yahoo.com</a>;</p>
FSC Performance and Standards Unit contact:	<p>FSC International Center  - Performance and Standards Unit -  Adenauerallee 134  53113 Bonn, Germany   +49-(0)228-36766-0   +49-(0)228-36766-30   <a href="mailto:psu@fsc.org">psu@fsc.org</a></p>

A.C. All rights reserved.

No part of this work covered by the publisher's copyright may be reproduced or copied in any form or by any means (graphic, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, re-cording taping, or information retrieval systems) without the written permission of the publisher.

The Forest Stewardship Council® (FSC) is an independent, not for profit, non-government organization established to support environmentally appropriate, socially beneficial, and economically viable management of the world's forests.

FSC's vision is that the world's forests meet the social, ecological, and economic rights and needs of the present generation without compromising those of future generations

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABREVIATIONS .....	v
1. PREFACE .....	1
1.1 Descriptive Statement of FSC International.....	1
1.2 Descriptive Statement of FSC Uganda .....	1
2. PREAMBLE.....	1
2.1 Purpose of the Standard .....	1
2.2 Scope of the Standard.....	1
2.3 Historic Context of Developing the SFM Standard .....	2
3. VERSION OF THE STANDARD .....	2
4. CONTEXT .....	2
4.1 General Description of the Area Covered by the Standard .....	2
4.2 Forestry in Uganda.....	2
4.3 The Process of Developing the Standard .....	4
5. REFERENCES.....	6
6. NOTE ON THE INTERPRETTION OF INDICATORS.....	7
7. SCALE, INTENSITY AND RISK (SIR) .....	8
7.1 Size category .....	8
7.2 Intensity category .....	9
7.3 Definitions of potential impact by different management regimes.....	9
7.4 Application of the indicators.....	10
8. PRINCIPLES, CRITERIA AND INDICATORS .....	11
9. ANNEXES .....	92
ANNEX A: APPLICABLE LAWS* AND REGULATIONS .....	92
ANNEX B: TRAINING REQUIREMENTS FOR RELEVANT WORKERS .....	118
ANNEX C: PAYMENTS FOR ECOSYSTEM SERVICES .....	119
ANNEX D: CONSERVATION AREA DESIGN CONCEPTUAL DIAGRAM .....	120
ANNEX E (i): ELEMENTS OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR NON-LOW IMPACT ORGANIZATIONS .....	121
ANNEX E (ii): ELEMENTS OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR SLIMFS.....	122
ANNEX F (i): CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK FOR PLANNING / MONITORINGNON-LOW IMPACT ORGANIZATIONS .....	123
ANNEX F (ii): CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK FOR PLANNING / MONITORING FOR SLIMFS .....	125
ANNEX G (i): MONITORING REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-LOW IMPACT ORGNAIZATIONS.....	126
ANNEX G (ii): MONITORING REQUIREMENTS FOR SLIMFS .....	129
ANNEX H: STRATEGIES FOR MAINTAINING HIGH CONSERVATION VALUES* .....	131
ANNEX I: HIGH CONSERVATION VALUE FRAMEWORK .....	133
ANNEX J: BEST AVAILABLE INFORMATION SOURCES .....	220
10. FSC GLOSSARY OF TERMS .....	222

## ABBREVIATIONS

AAC	Allowable Annual Cut
CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
CFR	Central Forest Reserve
CFM	Collaborative Forest Management
CITES	Convention on International Trade on Endangered Species
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
FAO	Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations
FMP	Forest Management Plan
FMU	Forest Management Unit
FSC	Forest Stewardship Council
FSSD	Forestry Services Support Department
GMO	Genetically Modified Organism
HCV	High Conservation Value
HCVF	High Conservation Value Forest
ILO	International Labour Organization
IP	Indigenous Peoples
ISSMI	Integrated Stock Survey and Management Inventory
IUCN	International Union of Conservation of Nature
LPI	Low Potential Impact
LPIO (LIO)	Low Potential Impact Organization
MWE	Ministry of Water and Environment
NEMA	National Environment Management Authority
NFA	National Forestry Authority
NFSS	National Forest Stewardship Standard
NFTPA	National Forestry and Tree Planting Act
NGO	Non-Government Organization
NOTU	National Organization of Trade Unions
NTFP	Non-Timber Forest Product
P&C	Principles and Criteria
PFE	Permanent Forest Estate
PSC	Policy and Standards Committee
PSU	Policy and Standards Unit
PSP	Permanent Sample Plot
RFM	Responsible Forest Management
SDG	Standard Development Group
SFM	Sustainable Forest Management
SIR	Scale, Intensity and Risk
SLIMF	Small and Low Intensity Managed Forest
SNR	Strict Nature Reserve
SPGS	Sawlog Production Grant Scheme
SPI	Standard Potential Impact
SPIO	Standard Potential Impact Organization
TMF	Tropical Moist Forest
UFWG	Uganda Forestry Working Group
UNBS	Uganda National Bureau of Standards
UNDRIP	United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples

UWA  
WWF

Uganda Wildlife Authority  
Worldwide Fund for Nature

## **1. PREFACE**

### **1.1 Descriptive Statement of FSC International**

Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) is an independent, non-governmental, not for profit organization established to promote responsible management of the world's forests. It provides standard setting, trademark assurance and accreditation services for companies and organizations interested in responsible forestry. Products carrying the FSC label are independently certified to assure consumers that they come from forests that are managed to meet the social, economic and ecological needs of present and future generations.

### **1.2 Descriptive Statement of FSC Uganda**

Uganda National Policy (2001) provides for the development of criteria and indicators that can be applied to forest certification. The FSC Certification Scheme was subsequently chosen as the preferred vehicle. In accordance with the FSC requirements, a 22-member Standards Development Group (SDG) was constituted after consultations with a wide range of stakeholders in forestry at national and sub-national levels, and endorsed during a national workshop that brought together stakeholders in the forestry sector on 31 January 2012. Environmental Alert, a local non-governmental organization (NGO), was endorsed to serve as the Secretariat of the SDG. The SDG was subsequently approved by FSC International and officially launched on 4th September 2012, to steer the process. The Standard was developed through an inclusive and transparent process which has involved representation of stakeholders from Uganda's environment and natural resources sector.

## **2. PREAMBLE**

### **2.1 Purpose of the Standard**

The FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of the Republic of Uganda is an adaptation of the FSC International Generic Indicators, the FSC Principles and Criteria (P&Cs) for Forest Stewardship provide an internationally recognized standard for responsible forest management (RFM), and are applicable to all forest operations seeking FSC certification in Uganda. The National Standard therefore aims at domesticating the Generic P&Cs by formulating indicators that are relevant to Uganda, and serves the following purposes.

1. To provide a yardstick for RFM in Uganda. In this respect, the Standard provides a level of excellence which Organization\*'s worker\*s would strive to achieve, even if they are not working for forest certification.
2. To serve as a tool of forest management through which Responsible Bodies (as defined in the National Forestry and Tree Planting Act, 2003) can conduct a self-assessment or audit to see to what extent they are meeting the requirements of responsible forest management.
3. To serve as the Standard to be used by FSC accredited Certification Bodies (CBs) to evaluate forest management practices at forest management unit (FMU) level for purposes of FSC forest certification in Uganda.

### **2.2 Scope of the Standard**

This Standard has been designed to guide RFM and evaluation of forest management in Uganda. It applies to all types of forests, including natural forests (tropical moist forests and woodlands) and forest plantations. These forests are further categorized depending on their sizes, intensity of management

activities and the risks or potential negative impacts, in accordance with the Scale, Intensity and Risk (SIR) Guidelines for Standard Developers (FSC-GUI-60-002 V1-0 EN).

### **2.3 Historic Context of Developing the SFM Standard**

Uganda has a long history of forestry management, with the first forestry policy developed in 1929. By 1960's the country was renowned for its good forestry practices in Africa, with established management standards for both natural forests and plantations based on researched information of the time. The political upheavals of 1970's through to the 1990's, led to the collapse in the management of the forest resources. The established management standards were forgotten, and in practice the focus was on unsustainable harvesting of the natural forests and plantations. The increasing population (at the average annual rate of about 3.2%) has resulted in growing demand for fuel wood, timber and other forest products and clearance of forests for other land uses, and exacerbated unsustainable use of forest resources.

The Forestry Sector reform (1998 – 2004) resulted in a refocusing the policy, legal and institutional frameworks aimed at promoting RFM. Together with these efforts has been the development of a range of forest management guidelines. However these various guidelines are scattered over a range of institutions, including Forestry Sector Support Department (FSSD), National Forestry Authority (NFA), Uganda Wildlife Authority (UWA), Sawlog Production Grant Scheme (SPGS), and many different non-government organizations (NGOs) involved in supporting management of forests and trees. In addition, they were not designed to sufficiently integrate internationally accepted standards of practices.

Forestry Certification is recognized to contribute to RFM by applying environmentally friendly, socially acceptable and economically viable approaches. Emerging as a voluntary market-based incentive, forest certification adds value to tradable forest commodities such as timber and carbon credits. Uganda has adopted the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) Scheme as a more suitable internationally recognized code of practice that enhances forest sustainability. The development of the National Forest Stewardship Standard is therefore an important step in applying the globally recognized Principles, Criteria and nationally relevant indicators.

## **3. VERSION OF THE STANDARD**

The current version of Standard is the first for Uganda, and was aligned with Version 5 of FSC Principles and Criteria (P&C).

## **4. CONTEXT**

### **4.1 General Description of the Area Covered by the Standard**

The Standard applies to the management of all types of forests within Uganda, including natural forests in protected areas, privately owned natural forests, plantations on protected areas and private land.

### **4.2 Forestry in Uganda**

Uganda has a total area of 24.155 million hectares, of which about 20.4 million is land, and the rest is covered by open water and wetlands. By 2005, Uganda's forests covered 3.6 million ha (about 18% of land area), categorized broadly into forest plantations, tropical high forests, woodlands (**Table 1**). However, there are also trees scattered in bushlands, grasslands, subsistence farmlands and commercial farmlands. **Table 2** shows the trends of land cover.



Table 1: Uganda's National Land cover

Land cover	Protected areas (ha)	Private land (ha)	Total (ha)
<b>Forest cover</b>			
Plantations	21,790	11,737	33,527
Tropical high forests	558,288	234,361	792,649
Woodlands	722,979	2,055,019	2,777,998
<b>Sub-total 1: Total forest and woodland area</b>	<b>1,303,057</b>	<b>2,301,117</b>	<b>3,604,174</b>
<b>Area with scattered tree cover</b>			
Bushlands	517,156	2,451,519	2,968,675
Grasslands	989,556	3,074,026	4,063,582
Subsistence farmlands	225,837	8,621,755	8,847,592
Commercial farmlands	3,967	102,662	106,629
<b>Sub-total 2: Total area with scattered tree cover in these categories</b>	<b>1,736,516</b>	<b>14,249,962</b>	<b>15,986,478</b>
<b>Sub-total 3: Other (built-up area, wetlands, water, impediments)</b>	<b>66,792</b>	<b>4,497,816</b>	<b>4,564,608</b>
<b>Total area</b>	<b>3,106,365</b>	<b>21,048,895</b>	<b>24,155,260</b>

Source: Adapted from National Forestry Authority, 2009

Table 2: Trend in Uganda's National Land cover

Year	Forest Cover	% of land cover	Forest loss	Extent of Deforestation	Annual Deforestation Rate
1890	10,800,000	52.82			
1990	4,933,271	24.13			
2005	3,602,365	17.62	1,330,906	27.0%	1.80%
2010	2,313,620	11.31	1,288,746	35.8%	7.15%
2015	1,835,147	8.97	478,472	20.7%	4.14%
1990 – 2015			3,098,124	63%	2.51%

Source: Adapted from NFA (2016)<sup>1</sup>

The high rate of deforestation is attributed to a number of factors, including, among others:

- Agricultural expansion into forested land;
- Unsustainable cutting of trees for timber, charcoal, firewood and other products; and
- Urban expansion and industrialization
- Issues in forest governance

<sup>1</sup> NFA (2016) Summary of Forest status in Uganda as of 2015. Unpublished report

Almost all Ugandans use forest and tree products in one form or another (timber, poles, firewood, charcoal, non-timber forest products, or benefit from the ecological functions derived from the forests. However, there is increasing rate of deforestation. In 2005, the National Forestry Authority estimated the average rate of deforestation in Uganda to be about 1.8%, based on satellite imagery data (NFA, 2009). Deforestation was highest in woodlands (2%), followed by tropical high forests (0.9%) and plantations (0.3%). See **Table 3**.

*Table 3: Changes in the forest cover between 1990 and 2005*

	<b>Plantations</b>	<b>TMF</b>	<b>Woodlands</b>	<b>Total Forest cover</b>
Area (ha) in 1990	35,066	924,207	3,974,102	4,933,375
Area (ha) in 2005	33,527	792,649	2,777,998	3,604,174
Change in Area	-1,539	-131,558	-1,196,104	-1,329,201
Annual change (ha)	-103	-8,771	-79,740	88,613
% Change in Area	-4.4	-14.2	-30.1	-26.9
% Change per year	-0.3	-0.9	-2.0	-1.8

*Source: Adapted from NFA, 2009*

The Uganda Forestry Policy and the National Forestry and Tree Planting Act aim at achieving sustainable increases in economic, social and environmental benefits from forests and trees by all the people of Uganda. To this end, RFM approach is considered very important in addressing the high deforestation rate, and to ensure that Ugandans continue to enjoy the products and services from forests and trees.

#### **4.3 The Process of Developing the Standard**

This Standard has been developed by the Standards Development Group for Uganda (SDG), with the support of the FSC National Focal Point in Uganda and a team of experts. **Table 4** shows the members of the SDG, which takes into consideration a balanced representation of the environmental, economic and social stakeholder interests, with seven members per chamber. In addition, a fair balance was maintained for the category of institutions representing Government (8 members), private sector (6 members) and civil society organizations (7 members).

*Table 4: Members of the Standard Development Group*

<b>Name</b>	<b>Organization</b>	<b>Institutional category</b>	<b>Expertise</b>	<b>Stakeholder interest</b>
1. Dr. Clement Okia	Makerere University School of Forestry, Biodiversity and Tourism	Independent	Chairperson	Independent
2. Mr. Levi Etwodu	National Forestry Authority (NFA)	Government	Natural forest management	Environment
3. Mr. Francis Ogwal	National Environment Management Authority (NEMA)	Government	Biodiversity conservation	Environment
4. Ms. Sophie Kutegeka	IUCN	Civil Society	Community forestry	Environment
5. Mr. Byabashaija Denis Mujuni	National Forestry Resources Research	Government	Forestry research	Environment

Name	Organization	Institutional category	Expertise	Stakeholder interest
	Institute			
6. Mr. Luke Patrick Onzima	Kyenjojo District Local Government	Government	Environment service delivery	Environment
7. Mr. Bob Kazungu	Ministry of Water & Environment /Forestry Services Support Department (FSSD)	Government	Environmental policy, laws and strategic development	Environment
8. Dr. Joshua Zake	Environmental Alert	Civil society	Working with communities and other stakeholders in the forestry sector	Environment
9. Mr. Dennis David Kavuma	Uganda Timber Growers Association (UTGA)	Civil society	Coordination of Commercial timber growers	Economic
10. Dr. Robert Nabanyumya	N and N Pine Company Ltd	Private sector	Medium size commercial tree grower	Economic
11. Mr. Businge Thaddeus	EMT Foresters Limited	Private sector	Commercial forestry service provider	Economic
12. Mr. Motlamedi Johannes Mokwena	Global Woods AG	Private sector	Large-scale commercial tree grower	Economic
13. Mr. Kiiza Simon	Green Resources	Private sector	Large-scale	Economic
14. Mr. Alois Mabutho	New Forests Company	Private sector	Large-scale commercial tree grower	Economic
15. Mr. Richard Kapere	Uganda Wildlife Authority	Government	Wildlife conservation and tourism	Economic
16. Mr. Gaster Kiyingi	Tree Talk Plus	Civil society	Social forestry and communication specialist	Social
17. Mr. Madira Davidson	NED	Private sector	Forestry enterprise promotion	Social
18. Mr. Moses Nyago	Wildlife Conservation Society	Civil society	Collaborative forest management	Social
19. Ms Annet Kandole	CARE (U)	Civil society	Indigenous and less	Social

Name	Organization	Institutional category	Expertise	Stakeholder interest
			advantaged communities	
20. Mr. David Kayhul	Uganda National Bureau of Standards (UNBS)	Government	National standards	Social
21. Dr. Patrick Byakagaba	Makerere University School of Forestry, Environmental & Geographical Science	Government	Forest education and research	Social
22. Mr. Martin Asiimwe	WWF Uganda Country Office	Civil society	Working with communities and stakeholder coordination	Social
23. Mr. Steve Amooti Nsita	Havilah Company Ltd	Private sector	Expert on FSC Certification	Technical Support
24. Mr. Stephen Khaukha	Havilah Company Ltd	Private sector	Forestry expert	Technical Support
25. Mr. Edward Kosia Mupada	Havilah Company Ltd	Private sector	FSC Focal Point	Technical Support
26. Dr. Nelson Turyahabwe	Makerere University, College of Agricultural and Environmental Sciences (CAES)	Makerere University	Local expert on forest audits and certification	Technical Support

## 5. REFERENCES

The following referenced documents are relevant for the application of this standard. For references without a version number, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

<i>FSC-STD-01-001 V5-1 EN</i>	<i>FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship</i>
<i>FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0 EN</i>	<i>International Generic Indicators</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-60-006 V2-0 EN</i>	<i>Development and Transfer of National Forest Stewardship Standards to the FSC Principles and Criteria Version 5-1</i>
<i>FSC-DIR-20-007 FSC</i>	<i>Directive on Forest Management Evaluations</i>
<i>FSC-ADV-30-901</i>	<i>Interpretation of Criterion 9-2</i>
<i>FSC-GUI-30-001 FSC</i>	<i>Pesticides Policy: Guidance on Implementation</i>
<i>FSC-GUI-30-004 FSC</i>	<i>Principles 2 and 3: Guidance on Interpretation</i>
<i>FSC-GUI-60-001</i>	<i>Guidance on the Interpretation of the FSC Principles and Criteria to Take Account of Small Scale and Low Intensity</i>
<i>FSC-GUI-60-002 V1-0 EN</i>	<i>Scale, Intensity and Risk (SIR) Guideline for Standard Developers</i>
<i>FSC-GUI-60-004 FSC</i>	<i>Forest Stewardship Standards: Structure, Content and Suggested Indicators</i>
<i>FSC-POL-01-004</i>	<i>Policy for the Association of Organizations with FSC</i>

<i>FSC-POL-10-004</i>	<i>Scope of Application of the FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship, and associated FSC-DIS-01-001</i>
<i>FSC-POL-20-002</i>	<i>Partial Certification of Large Ownerships</i>
<i>FSC-POL-20-003</i>	<i>The Excision of Areas from the Scope of Certification</i>
<i>FSC-POL-30-001</i>	<i>FSC Pesticides Policy</i>
<i>FSC-POL-30-401 FSC</i>	<i>Certification and the ILO Conventions:</i>
<i>FSC-POL-30-602 FSC</i>	<i>Interpretation on GMOs (Genetically Modified Organisms)</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-01-001</i>	<i>The Development and Approval of FSC Social and Environmental International Standards</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-01-005</i>	<i>Processing Appeals</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-01-008</i>	<i>Processing Complaints in the FSC Certification Scheme</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-01-009</i>	<i>Processing Formal Complaints in the FSC Certification Scheme</i>
<i>FSC-STD-01-002</i>	<i>Glossary of Terms</i>
<i>FSC-STD-01-003</i>	<i>SLIMF Eligibility Criteria</i>
<i>FSC-STD-01-005 FSC</i>	<i>Dispute Resolution System</i>
<i>FSC-STD-20-001</i>	<i>General Requirements for FSC Accredited Certification Bodies</i>
<i>FSC-STD-20-002 V2 1 EN</i>	<i>Structure and Content of Forest Stewardship Standards</i>
<i>FSC-STD-20-012</i>	<i>Standard for Evaluation of FSC Controlled Wood in Forest Management Enterprises</i>
<i>FSC-STD-30-005 FSC</i>	<i>Standard for Group Entities in Forest Management Groups</i>
<i>FSC-STD-30-010</i>	<i>Controlled Wood Standard for Forest Management Enterprises</i>
<i>FSC-STD-40-005</i>	<i>Standard for Company Evaluation of Controlled Wood</i>
<i>FSC-STD-60-002 (V1-0) EN</i>	<i>Structure and Content of National Forest Stewardship Standards</i>
<i>FSC-STD-60-006</i>	<i>Development of National Forest Stewardship Standards</i>

## 6. NOTE ON THE INTERPRETTION OF INDICATORS

This Standard has been designed to comply with the requirements of FSC-STD-60-002 Structure and Content of Forest Stewardship Standards, and founded on the 10 FSC Principles<sup>2</sup> (see Table 5).

Table 5: FSC Principles of Responsible Forest Management

<b>FSC Principle</b>
Principle 1: Compliance with Laws
Principle 2: Workers' Rights and Employment Conditions
Principle 3: Indigenous Peoples' Rights
Principle 4: Community Relations
Principle 5: Benefits from the Forest
Principle 6: Environmental Values and Impacts
Principle 7: Management Planning
Principle 8: Monitoring and Assessment
Principle 9: High Conservation Values
Principle 10: Implementation of Management Activities

<sup>2</sup>FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship – FSC-STD-01-001 V5-1 EN

The Standard is structured in a hierarchy of FSC Principles, Criteria and a set of Indicators of forest management “best practice” that a forest owner or manager has to achieve under each criterion. For each indicator, Verifiers are provided. **Table 6** describes each element of the Standard.

*Table 6: Hierarchy of the elements of the FSC Standard*

FSC Principle	The 10 Principles of responsible forest management.	This is as Principle 1, Principle 2, etc.
FSC Criteria (singular criterion)	The various criteria described under each Principle. It is a means of judging whether or not a Principle has been fulfilled	For Criteria under Principle 1 are designated as 1.1; 1.2; 1.3, etc.
Standard Indicator	This is a simple statement that something is done, or that something exists. The indicator provides objective evidence of the norm that requires compliance. The auditors use this to confirm compliance (yes) or non-compliance (no).	Designated under relevant Criteria, e.g. 1.1.1; 1.1.2; 1.1.3, etc.  Where new indicators have been added, the indicators are numbered as 1.4.1a; 1.4.1b, etc.
Verifier	A description of the source of evidence, e.g. documents, field observation or interviews.	
Guidance	Descriptions to facilitate further understanding of the requirement of the specific indicator	

Compliance with the standard shall be determined by evaluating observed performance at the Forest Management Unit (FMU) level against each indicator of the standard, and in comparison with any performance threshold(s) specified for the indicator. For each indicator, a number of verifiers and guides have been listed. The list of verifiers serves as a menu of possible sources of information from which auditors may select. Any one or more of the verifiers and guides are sufficient to prove compliance by small and low impact managed forest (SLIMF) management units

## 7. SCALE, INTENSITY AND RISK (SIR)

### 7.1 Size category

The size category is related to the number of hectares that the Management Unit covers (see **Table 7**).

*Table 7: Categorization of forests according to Scale*

SCALE	Small Size		Medium Size	
	<i>Natural Forests</i>	<i>Plantations</i>	<i>Natural Forests</i>	<i>Plantations</i>
	<1,000ha	<1,000ha	1,000-300,000ha	1,000-80,000ha

The threshold for the *small scale forests* in Uganda was set at 1,000 ha or less. Based on the size categorization, all forests in Uganda are either small scale or medium scale.

- The forests 1,000 ha and less are small scale;
- Forest plantations above 1,000 ha and less than 80,000 ha are medium scale;

- Natural forests above 1,000 ha and less than 300,000 ha are medium scale;
- There are no large scale forest plantations, since all forests are less than 80,000 ha,
- There are no large scale natural forests, since all are less than 300,000 ha.

## 7.2 Intensity category

Intensity is a measure of the force, severity or strength of the impact of a management activity on environmental, social or economic values. In the context of forest management, intensity usually refers to site disturbing activities, such as disturbance caused by harvesting machinery, removal of trees, soil preparation, planting, use of fertilizers, use of pesticides, etc.

Management activities may be considered to have a high intensity when they have high direct or indirect impacts on environmental, social or economic values. An activity with a low intensity is expected to have a minor impact on a particular value or on values in general.

## 7.3 Definitions of potential impact by different management regimes

### a) Management Regimes of Low Potential Impact (LPI)

- Harvesting of Non-IUCN red-listed NTFP species only; OR
- Provision of ecosystem services; OR
- Sawlog Felling Cycle  $\geq 30$  years in natural forests; AND
- Sawlog Harvesting  $\leq 30\text{m}^3/\text{ha}$  over the Felling Cycle in natural forests; OR
- Any combination or all of the activities above being carried out in one management unit; AND
- Not using heavy machinery; AND
- Not using chemicals

### b) Management Regimes of Standard Potential Impact (SPI)

- Harvesting includes IUCN red-listed species where there is sufficient information to show that the species is in the “vulnerable”, “near threatened” or “of least concern” categories in Uganda; OR
- Provision of ecosystem services; OR
- Sawlog Felling Cycle  $\geq 30$  years in natural forests; AND
- Sawlog Harvesting  $\leq 60\text{m}^3/\text{ha}$  over the rotation period in natural forests; OR
- Using either chemicals or heavy machinery, but not both; OR
- Any combination or all of the activities above being carried out in one management unit

### c) Management Regimes of High Potential Impact (HPI)

- Sawlog Felling Cycle  $\leq 30$  years in natural forests; OR
- Sawlog harvesting  $> 60\text{m}^3/\text{ha}$  over the rotation period in natural forests; OR
- Using chemicals; OR
- Using heavy machinery; OR

- Combining of any or all of the above with harvesting of IUCN red-listed species where there is sufficient information to show that the species is in the “vulnerable”, “near threatened” or “of least concern” categories in Uganda; OR
- Any combination or all of the activities above being carried out in one management unit

In Uganda, there are no high potential impact management regimes, and hence there are no High Potential Impact Organizations.

**d) Small and Low Impact Managed Forests (SLIMFs)**

A forest management unit is classed as SLIMF units when:

- (i) When the total area is 1000 ha or smaller, OR
- (ii) the rate of harvesting is less than 20% of the mean annual increment (MAI)<sup>2</sup> within the total production forest area of the unit, AND
- (iii) EITHER the annual harvest from the total production forest area is less than 5000 cubic metres,
- (iv) OR the average annual harvest from the total production forest is less than 5,000 m<sup>3</sup> / year during the period of validity of the certificate as verified by harvest reports and surveillance audits.

**7.4 Application of the indicators**

The scope of this Standard covers the Standard potential Impact organizations (under which the Standard Potential impact management regimes are applied), the Low Potential Impact organizations (where low potential impact management regimes are applied) and the SLIMFs. Indicators for SLIMFs are preceded by the phrase “**For LIO and SLIMF**” to show that the alternative indicator was applicable only to the small scale organisations and the Low Potential Impact Organizations.



## 8. PRINCIPLES, CRITERIA AND INDICATORS

### PRINCIPLE 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS

The Organization\* shall\* comply with all applicable laws, regulations and nationally-ratified international treaties, conventions and agreements.

**Criterion 1.1** The Organization\* shall be a legally\* defined entity with clear, documented and unchallenged legal registration, with written authorization from the legally competent authority for specific activities.

**Indicator 1.1.1** Legal registration\* to carry out all activities within the scope of the certificate is documented and unchallenged.

**Verifiers:**

- Documents of legal registration, which may include: Certificate of Incorporation (for Companies).

**Comments / Guidance:**

1. Ref: The Companies Act, 1961
2. Government agencies are established by law or executive order. Registration of private and community based entities is normally carried out by the Registrar of Titles at national level and local government at district and sub-county level
3. Legal registration to operate as an enterprise is done through the Registrar of companies, NGO Registration Board, or Local Governments
4. Mandates of statutory bodies are prescribed in the respective Statutory Instruments establishing them. NFA (CFRs), local governments (LFRs), established under NFTP; UWA (wildlife conservation areas) established under Uganda Wildlife Act

**Indicator 1.1.2** Legal registration\* is granted by a legally competent\* authority, according to legally prescribed processes

**Verifiers:**

- Evidence that the issuing body and signatory are legally authorized
- Documents of legal registration, OR
- Statutory Instrument prescribing mandate

**Guide:**

1. Legal registration to operate as an enterprise is done through the Registrar of companies, NGO Registration Board, or Local Governments
2. For CFRs, the NFTP defines the mandate of NFA as the responsible body
3. For LFRs, the NFTP defines local governments as responsible bodies

4. For Community Based Organisations: registration with the relevant District
5. For private individuals: The NFTP (2003) encourages the private forest owners to register with the respective District Land Boards

**Criterion 1.2** The Organization\* shall\* demonstrate that the legal status of the Management Unit, including tenure and use rights, and its boundaries, are clearly defined.

**Indicator 1.2.1** Legal\* tenure\* to manage and use resources within the scope of the certificate is documented.

**Verifiers**

- Statutory Instrument
- Land titles
- Certificates of customary ownership of land
- Licenses
- agreements, and confirmation letters from local authorities
- Consultations with the Organization’s workers and relevant stakeholders

**Reference:**

- The Forest Reserves Declaration Order, 1998 (Schedule I: Central Forest Reserves; Schedule II Local Forest Reserves),
- For private forests: The National Forestry and Tree Planting Act, Articles 21 (for private natural forest) and 22 (for private plantation forests).

**Indicator 1.2.2** Legal+ tenure\* is granted by a legally competent\* authority according to legally prescribed processes.

**Verifiers**

- Land titles
- Certificates of customary ownership
- Licenses,
- agreements, and confirmation letters from local authorities
- Consultations with the Organization’s workers and relevant stakeholders

**Comments**

Different responsible bodies for the different forest categories are as follows (Ref NFTP):

- National Forestry Authority - For Central Forest Reserves,
- Respective local government councils for Local Forest Reserves under their jurisdiction,
- For community forests – a body declared by the Minister to manage the specified forest
- For private forests: the forest owner or person in charge of the forest

**Indicator 1.2.3 (a)** The boundaries of all Management Units\* within the scope of the certificate are clearly documented and shown on maps.

**Verifiers**

- boundary plan maps
- Forest Management Plans
- observation of boundary marks on the ground (cairns, live markers, direction trenches)
- interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

- Boundary description and maps are a requirement in a Forest Management Plan provided for under the NFTP.
- For the forest reserves, the Forest Reserves Declaration Order, 1998 gives reference to Boundary Plans (Schedule I: Central Forest Reserves, Schedule II Local Forest Reserves)

**Indicator 1.2.3 (b)** The boundaries of all Management Units\* within the scope of the certificate are clearly marked on the ground

**Verifiers**

- observation of boundary marks on the ground (cairns, live markers, direction trenches)
- interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

- Legal obligation based on Management Plan (sect 28) and sect 81(b) of the NFTP which imply that managed forests have boundary marks; and guided by the Departmental Standing Orders (1997), as saved in the NFTP and the regulations thereof
- Clear marking and maintenance of the boundary on the ground is a good practice that addresses possible conflicts with neighbours and eases management

**Criterion 1.3** The Organization\* shall\* have legal rights to operate in the Management Unit\*, which fit the legal status of The Organization\* and of the Management Unit\*, and shall\* comply with the associated legal\* obligations in applicable national and local laws and regulations and administrative requirements. The legal\* rights shall provide for harvest of products and/or supply of ecosystem services\* from within the Management Unit. The Organization\* shall \*pay the legally prescribed charges associated with such rights and obligations.

**Indicator 1.3.1** All activities covered by the Management Plan, including the harvest of products and/or supply of ecosystem services\*, are carried out in compliance with:

1. Applicable laws\* and regulations and administrative requirements,
2. Obligatory codes of practice, and
3. Legal\* and customary rights\*.

**Verifiers**

- The Forest Management Plan and operational plans
- Policies, operational procedures and standards.
- Licences or permits
- Interviews with, Organization’s workers and other stakeholders.
- Field observations

**Guidance**

See Annex A on applicable laws, regulations and administrative requirement and codes of practice

**Indicator 1.3.2** Payment is made in a *timely manner* \* of all applicable legally prescribed charges connected with forest\* management.

**Verifiers**

- Invoices, tax returns, receipts.
- Books of Accounts
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders.

**Guidance**

Legally prescribed charges include:

- Licence fees
- Royalty fees
- Land rent fees
- Forest fees as prescribed in legal instrument 7 of 2000
- Forest produce fees and Licenses Order – SI No. 16 of 2000
- URA taxes (income tax, pay as you earn, Value added tax, withholding tax, etc.) as may be applicable
- National Social Security Fund

**Criterion 1.4** The Organization\* shall develop and implement measures, and/or shall engage with regulatory agencies, to systematically protect the Management Unit\* from unauthorized or illegal resource use, settlement and other illegal activities.

**Indicator 1.4.1 (a)** Measures are implemented to provide protection\* from unauthorized or illegal harvesting, hunting, fishing, trapping, collecting, settlement and other unauthorized activities.

**Verifiers**

- A documented Forest protection Strategy
- Records tracking various illegal activities
- Field observations
- interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Reports (monthly, situational, field visit reports, etc.)

**Guidance**

Illegal or prohibited activities are described in the NFTP Act, and other laws

**Indicator 1.4.1 (b) For LIO and SLIMF** Measures to control, monitor and prevent illegal and unauthorized activities on the Management Unit are in place and implemented

**Verifiers**

- Field observations
- interviews with stakeholders
- A record on collaborative activities
- Interviews with Organization’s worker’s , regulatory bodies and other stakeholders

**Indicator 1.4.2** Where protection\* is the legal\* responsibility of regulatory bodies, a system is implemented to work with these regulatory bodies to identify, report, control and discourage unauthorized or illegal\* activities.

**Verifiers**

- A record on collaborative activities
- Interviews with Organization’s worker’s , regulatory bodies and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

- The Ministry responsible for forestry is responsible for regulation and overall oversight of forestry sector
- NFA is responsible for the management of CFRs
- UWA is responsible for management of wildlife resources both inside and outside protected areas
- Local governments are responsible for LFRs and decentralized forestry functions
- NEMA is responsible for regulating environmental management

**Indicator 1.4.3** If illegal or unauthorized activities are detected, measures are implemented to address them.

**Verifiers**

- Documented evidence
- Interviews with Organization's workers, regulatory bodies and other stakeholders

**Criterion 1.5** The Organization\* shall\* comply with the applicable national laws\*, local laws, ratified international conventions and obligatory codes of practice\*, relating to the transportation and trade of forest products within and from the Management Unit\*, and/or up to the point of first sale.

**Indicator 1.5.1** Compliance with applicable national laws\*, local laws\*, ratified\* international conventions and obligatory codes of practice\* relating to the transportation and trade of forest products up to the point of first sale is demonstrated.

**Verifiers**

- Records on compliance
- receipts,
- Produce Movement Permits,
- field observations
- interviews with stakeholders

**Guidance**

1. Ref: Annex A
2. The NFTP Regulations provides requirements along the chain of custody
3. The following documents are important in tracking the chain of custody:
  - License to harvest;
  - Forest Produce Declaration Form;
  - Receipt indicating payment for the produce;
  - the coding of the timber (using a hammer to number identification numbers)
  - The Forest Produce Movement Permit.

**Indicator 1.5.2** Compliance with CITES provisions is demonstrated, including through possession of certificates for harvest and trade in any CITES species.

**Verifiers**

- Lists of CITES plants and animals, (see Annex A )
- Evidence of protection of CITES species
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

1. See Annex A (Part IV) for the list of CITES species in Uganda

2. The Ministry of Wildlife, Tourism and Antiquities is responsible for the management of CITES;
3. The list of species can be found at the Ministry of Wildlife and Antiquities (for animals); at the Ministry of Water and Environment (for plants)

**Criterion 1.6** The Organization shall identify, prevent and resolve disputes over issues of statutory or customary law, which can be settled out of court in a timely manner, through engagement with affected stakeholders.

**Indicator 1.6.1 (a)** A publicly available dispute resolution mechanism is in place; developed through culturally appropriate engagement with affected stakeholders.

**Verifiers**

- Documented dispute resolution mechanism
- Evidence of public availability of document
- Records of engagements

**Comment:**

Where CFM processes exist the CFM agreements are expected to have a provision for conflict resolution

**Indicator 1.6.1 (b) For LIO and SLIMF** Dispute resolution is implemented through the locally accepted practices

**Verifiers**

- Records / reports
- Interviews with stakeholders

**Guidance :**

In most cases there is a will to resolve disputes amicably based on mutual understanding. However, where this fails, local leaders are called in for help. Minutes of proceedings are taken by the Secretary of the Council for future reference. However, in actions of criminal nature, the police is called in.

**Indicator 1.6.2** Disputes related to issues of applicable laws or customary law that can be settled out of court are responded to in a timely manner, and are either resolved or are in the dispute resolution process.

**Verifiers**

- Documentary evidence
- Interviews with the Organizations workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 1.6.3** Up to date record of disputes related to issues of applicable laws\* or customary law, are held including:

1. Steps taken to resolve *disputes\**;
2. Outcomes of all *dispute\** resolution processes; and

3. Unresolved *disputes\**, the reasons why they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.

**Verifiers**

- Documented records of the disputes
- Interviews with stakeholders

**Indicator 1.6.4** Operations cease in areas where disputes involving the following exist:

1. ownership and management rights of the resource is disputed
2. the safety of workers or local communities is threatened
3. court has issued an injunction

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with Organization’s workers and consultation with representatives of local communities, local government officials, traditional leaders and other opinion leaders.
- Complete record of a history of disputes

**Guidance :**

The indicator identifies the three key areas where disputes exist of:

1. Substantial magnitude;
2. Substantial duration, or
3. Involves significant numbers of interest

**Criterion 1.7** The Organization shall publicize a commitment not to offer or receive bribes in money or any other form of corruption, and shall comply with anti-corruption legislation where this exists. In the absence of anti-corruption legislation, The Organization shall implement other anti- corruption measures proportionate to the scale and intensity of management activities and the risk of corruption.

**Indicator 1.7.1 (a)** A policy is implemented that includes a commitment not to offer or receive bribes of any description.

**Verifiers**

- Policy statement
- Interview with Organization’s workers
- Interview stakeholders

**Guidance**

1. Refer to the Anti-Corruption Act (2009)
2. In Uganda, the points in operations where corruption is likely to occur include getting a license to plant in FRs; payment of the necessary fees & taxes; under-declaration of forest produce (sizes, quantities, species), illegal harvesting in FRs and marketing produce, among others



**Indicator 1.7.1 (b) For LIO and SLIMFs** A policy statement against corruption is included in the Management Plan and is implemented

**Verifiers**

- FMP
- Interview with other stakeholders
- Interview with Organization's workers

**Guidance**

In Uganda, the points in operations where corruption is likely to occur include

- getting a license to plant in FRs;
- payment of the necessary fees & taxes;
- under-declaration of forest produce (sizes, quantities, species),
- illegal harvesting in FRs and
- marketing forest produce, among others

**Indicator 1.7.2** The policy or statement meets or exceeds related legislation.

**Verifiers**

- Policy or statement
- Interview with Organization's workers

**Guidance**

Refer to Annex A on laws related to corruption

**Indicator 1.7.3** The policy or statement is publicly available at no cost

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of public availability

**Indicator 1.7.4** Bribery, coercion and other acts of corruption do not occur.

**Verifiers**

- Audit and monitoring reports
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Record of relevant legal or administrative proceedings

**Indicator 1.7.5** Corrective measures are implemented if corruption does occur

**Verifiers**

- Documented evidence of corrective measures applied
- Audit reports
- Interview with stakeholders
- Interview with Organization’s workers

**Guidance**

Documented evidence and audit reports may not be required for the LIOs and SLIMFs

**Criterion 1.8** The Organization shall demonstrate a long-term commitment to adhere to the FSC Principles and Criteria in the Management Unit, and to related FSC Policies and Standards. A statement of this commitment shall be contained in a publicly available document made freely available.

**Indicator 1.8.1** A written policy, endorsed by an individual with authority to implement the policy, includes a long- term commitment to forest management practices consistent with the FSC Principles and Criteria and related Policies and Standards.

**Verifiers**

- Written policy with appropriate statement is available
- Evidence of public display and dissemination of policy
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, and stakeholders

**Guidance**

***For LIOs and SLIMFs*** A statement in a Management Plan committing the Organization to FSC Principles, Criteria, related policies and standards is sufficient

**Indicator 1.8.2** The policy is publicly available\* at no cost.

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of public availability

**PRINCIPLE 2: WORKERS’ RIGHTS AND EMPLOYMENT CONDITIONS**

**The Organization shall maintain and/or enhance the social and economic wellbeing of workers.**

**Criterion 2.1** The Organization shall uphold the principles and rights at work as defined in the ILO Declaration on Fundamental Principles and Rights at Work (1998) based on the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions.

**Indicator 2.1.1** Employment practices and conditions for workers demonstrate conformity with or uphold the principles and rights of work addressed in the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions, as defined in the ILO Declaration on Fundamental Principles and Rights at Work (1998).

**Verifiers**

- Policies
- Interviews with workers and labour organizations
- Workers' contracts

**Guidance**

Refer to Annex A (part III) on laws related to workers' rights and employment conditions

**Indicator 2.1.2** Workers are able to establish or join labour organizations of their own choosing subject only to the rules of the labour organization concerned.

**Verifiers**

- Workers committees
- Minutes of meetings for workers
- Minutes of joint meetings between workers and Management

**Guidance**

1. Implementation of Article 5 of the Convention concerning Freedom of Association and Protection of the right to organize Convention (1948, No. 87).

Ref: Annex A (Part III) on the 8 ILO Conventions and the Labour Union Act (2006).

2. No specific Union branches exist for the forest sector in Uganda. But there are possibilities to join the National Organization of Trade Unions (NOTU).

**Indicator 2.1.3 (a)** Agreements are implemented resulting from collective bargaining with formal and informal workers organization.

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of agreements being implemented
- Interviews with Organization's workers and Labour Union representatives, CSOs and local authorities
- Copy of agreements

**Guidance**

- Implementation of the Right to Organize and Collective Bargaining Convention, 1949 (No. 98)
- Ref: Annex A (Part III) on the 8 ILO Conventions
- Ref Sec 3 (c) and Sec 24 (1) (d) of the Labour Unions Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.1.3 (b)** Forced or compulsory labour in all its forms is not used in all operations

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with Organization's workers and Labour Union representatives, CSOs and local authorities

**Guidance**

1. The indicator domesticates the Forced Labour Convention 130 (No. 29) and the Abolition of Forced Labour Convention, 1957 (No. 105). Ref: Annex A on the 8 ILO Conventions
2. Ref Sec 5 of the Employment Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.1.3 (c)** Children under the age of twelve years are not employed.

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s and Labour Union representatives, CSOs and local authorities
- Specialized study reports if any
- Field observations

**Guidance**

1. Implementation of the Minimum Age Convention 1973 (No. 138)
2. Ref: Annex A (Part III) on the 8 ILO Conventions and Sec. 32 of the Employment Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.1.3 (d)** A child at the age of fifteen (15) years is employed under supervision by an adult over eighteen years only where work is not injurious to the child physically, mentally and socially and does not affect the child's education

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s and Labour Union representatives, CSOs and local authorities
- Specialized study reports if any
- Field observations

**Guidance**

1. Implementation of the Minimum Age Convention 1973 (No. 138)
2. Ref: Annex A (III) on the 8 ILO Conventions and Sec. 32 of the Employment Act (2006)

**Criterion 2.2.** The Organization shall promote gender equality in employment practices, training opportunities, awarding of contracts, processes of engagement and management activities.

**Indicator 2.2.1 (a).** Systems are implemented that promote gender equality and prevent gender discrimination in employment practices, training opportunities, awarding of contracts, processes of engagement and management activities.

**Verifiers**

- Policies, including the Human Resource Manual
- Program / plans for implementing policies
- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s and labour union representatives, CSOs, local authorities

**Guidance**

Ref: Annex A, and Sec 6 of the Employment Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.2.1 (b). For LIOs and SLIMF** There is commitment to promoting gender equity and preventing discrimination in management operations

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guidance**

Ref: Annex A, and Sec 6 of the Employment Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.2.1 (c). For LIOs and SLIMF** Awarding of contracts and training opportunities is done without gender discrimination

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guidance**

Ref: Annex A, and Sec 6 of the Employment Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.2.2.** Job opportunities are open to both women and men under the same conditions, and women are encouraged to participate actively in all levels of employment

**Verifiers**

- Policies, including the Human Resource Manual
- Interviews with Organization\*’s worker\*s and labour union representatives, CSOs, local authorities.
- Evidence that adverts encourage both women and men to apply

**Indicator 2.2.3.** Work typically carried out by women (nurseries, silviculture, Non Timber Forest Product harvesting, weighing, packing, etc.) is included in training and health & safety programs to the same extent as work typically carried out by men

**Verifiers**

- Training program
- Interviews with workers
- Training Reports (for large FMUs)

**Indicator 2.2.4.** Women and men are paid the same wage when they do the same work.

**Verifiers**

- Pay rolls
- Interviews with the Organization's workers

**Indicator 2.2.5.** Women are paid directly and using mutually agreed methods (e.g. direct bank transfer, direct payments for school fees, etc.) to ensure they safely receive and retain their wages.

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of direct payment to women
- Interviews with the organization's workers

**Indicator 2.2.6.** Maternity leave is no less than a sixty working days in line with section 56 of the Employment Act (2006).

**Verifiers**

- Human Resource Manual (for large FMUs)
- Interviews with the Organization's workers
- Evidence of approval of maternity leave
- Employment contracts

**Guidance**

The Organization shall comply with Sec 56 of the Employment Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.2.7.** Paternity leave is no less than four working days leave from work, fully paid and granted immediately after the delivery or miscarriage of a wife in line with section 57 of the Employment Act (2006)

**Verifiers**

- Human Resource Manual (for large FMUs)
- Interviews with the Organization's workers
- Evidence of approval of paternity leave
- Employment contracts

**Guidance**

The Organization shall comply with Sec 57 of the Employment Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.2.8.** Meetings, management committees and decision-making forums are organized to include women and men, and to facilitate the active participation of both.

**Verifiers**

- Record of meetings and decision making forums

- Interview with the Organization’s workers

**Guidance**

**Indicator 2.2.9.** Confidential and effective mechanisms exist for reporting and eliminating cases of sexual harassment and discrimination based on the grounds of sex, gender, marital status, parenthood or any other such grounds

**Verifiers**

- Organizational policy and guidelines
- Structures to address the reported cases
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers

**Guidance**

Refer to:

- Articles 21, 24, 31, 32, 33 and 34 of the Constitution of the Republic of Uganda (1995), as amended 2005
- Sections 6 and 7 of the Employment Act, 2006
- Sections 145, 146, 147 and 148 of the Penal Code Act

**Criterion 2.3.** The Organization shall implement health and safety practices to protect workers from occupational safety and health hazards. These practices shall, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk of management activities, meet or exceed the recommendations of the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work.

**Indicator 2.3.1 (a).** Health and safety practices are developed and implemented that meet or exceed the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work

**Verifiers**

- Documented H&S Strategy
- A record of health care services provided to workers
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers
- Field observations

**Guidance**

Ref Sec 13 and 14 of the Occupational Safety and Health Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.3.1 (b). For LIOs and SLIMF** The Health and safety requirements for the forest work and practices are known to the Organization’s workers and are appropriate, commensurate with the nature of the job are implemented

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with the Organization's workers
- Interview with other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guidance**

Ref Sec 13 and 14 of the Occupational Safety and Health Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.3.2.** Workers have personal protective equipment appropriate to their assigned tasks.

**Verifiers**

- Records
- Interviews with workers
- Observation

**Guidance**

1. Ref to Sec 19 of the Occupational Safety and Health Act (2006)
2. Ref to the Guideline, "Safety and Health in Forest Work", (ILO , 1998) provides minimum requirements for personal protective equipment that are appropriate for various forestry operations such as planting, thinning, chemical spraying, logging, and chainsaw operations. The PPE include, among others, safety boots or shoes, safety trousers, gloves, close-fitting clothes, safety helmets, goggles, and nose & ear muffs

**Indicator 2.3.3.** The Contracts of the Organization's workers includes compulsory and effective use of appropriate personal protective equipment is implemented when undertaking forest work.

**Verifiers**

- Employment contract
- Evidence of measures to ensure compliance
- Interviews with workers
- Observation

**Guidance**

Ref to Sec 19 of the Occupational Safety and Health Act (2006)

**Indicator 2.3.4 (a).** Records are kept on Health and Safety practices, including accident rates and lost time to accidents.

**Verifiers**

- Records
- Reports of studies analyzing accidents



**Indicator 2.3.4 (b).** For LIOs and SLIMF Records are kept on Health and Safety practices, including accidents

**Verifiers**

- Records

**Indicator 2.3.5.** The frequency and severity of accidents are assessed and are consistently low in comparison with best available information

**Verifiers**

- Records of types of accidents and their frequency
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

Best available information can be derived from the Department of labour and labour unions

**Indicator 2.3.6.** The Health and Safety practices are reviewed regularly, after a major incident and at least annually

**Verifiers**

- Up-dated Health and Safety Strategy
- Evidence of adaptive management with respect to health and safety
- Interviews with Organization’s workers

**Criterion 2.4.** The Organization shall pay wages that meet or exceed minimum forest industry standards or other recognized forest industry wage agreements or living wages, where these are higher than the legal minimum wages. When none of these exist, The Organization shall through engagement with workers develop mechanisms for determining living wages.

**Indicator 2.4.1.** Wages paid by The Organization in all circumstances meet or exceed legal minimum wage rates, where such rates exist.

**Verifiers**

- Employment contracts
- Interviews with the workers
- Salary and wage structure
- Pay roll
- Labour-related studies

**Guidance**

A Minimum wage of UGX 6,000 exists at national level: Ref SI 221 (3) The Minimum Wages Advisory Boards and Wages Councils (Minimum Wages) Order). The rate has not been revised since 1984. However minimum wage of 6,000 Ugandan shillings no longer makes economic sense as the value of Ugandan shillings has been declining through government policy and inflation.

**Indicator 2.4.2.** Wages paid meet or exceed:

- 1) Minimum forest industry standards; or
- 2) Other recognized forest industry wage agreements; or
- 3) Living wage that is higher than legal minimum wage.

**Verifiers**

- Employment contracts
- Salary and wage structure
- Pay roll
- Interviews with workers and other industry employers

**Guidance**

Refer to SI 221 (3) - The Minimum Wages Advisory Boards and Wages Councils (Minimum Wages) Order). The minimum wage in Uganda is obsolete, and will be operational once updated by a revised Statutory Instrument

**Indicator 2.4.3.** When no minimum wage exists, wages are negotiated and agreed upon as part of the contract of service and / or through formal and informal workers organizations\*.

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with workers
- Salary and wage structure
- Pay roll
- Procedure used to determine wage rates
- Interview with similar industry actors

**Guidance**

Ref Employment Act, 2006).

**Indicator 2.4.4.** Wages, salaries and contracts are paid on time.

**Verifiers**

- Policy statement on wages and salaries
- Interviews with workers
- Pay rolls
- Records showing that workers are paid on time

- Service contract

**Guidance**

1. The issue of timeliness depends on the employment contract, which states the conditions of employment.
2. Ref. Employment Act (2006)

**Criterion 2.5.** The Organization shall demonstrate that workers have job-specific training and supervision to safely and effectively implement the Management Plan and all management activities.

**Indicator 2.5.1.** Workers\* have job specific training consistent with Annex B and supervision to safely and effectively contribute to the implementation of the management plan\* and all management activities.

**Verifiers**

- Training program
- Records of training events
- Skills certificates
- Field observation
- Interviews of staff, contractors, workers and other stakeholder

**Guidance**

Refer to Annex B

**Indicator 2.5.2.** Up to date training records are kept for all relevant workers.

**Verifiers**

- Records of training events

**Criterion 2.6.** The Organization through engagement with workers shall have mechanisms for resolving grievances and for providing fair compensation to workers for loss or damage to property, occupational diseases, or occupational injuries sustained while working for The Organization.

**Indicator 2.6.1 (a).** A dispute resolution process is in place, developed through culturally appropriate engagement with workers.

**Verifiers**

- Documented dispute resolution process
- Human Resource Manual

- Conflict management policy
- Clauses for conflict resolution in employee contracts
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and contractors

**Guidance:**

In Uganda, “culturally appropriate” is very diverse and location specific. FMUs will have to document specific approaches. Refer to the Glossary for the definition of “culturally appropriate”

**Indicator 2.6.1 (b). For LIOs and SLIMF** The contracts of service for the Organization’s workers include dispute resolution process or procedure and provides for possible arbitration or available legal means in case of failure to settle to disputes amicably.

**Verifiers**

- Contract of service
- Interviews with organization’s workers

**Guidance:**

Ref to the Labour Dispute (Arbitration and Dispute Settlement) Act, 2006.

**Indicator 2.6.2.** Workers grievances are identified and responded to and are either resolved or are in the dispute\* resolution process.

**Verifiers**

- Record of reported grievances (**For large FMUs**)
- Proceedings of how the grievances were dealt with
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 2.6.3.** Up to date records of workers grievances related to workers loss or damage of property, occupational diseases or injuries are maintained including:

1. Steps taken to resolve grievances;
2. Outcomes of all dispute resolution processes including fair compensation; and
3. Unresolved disputes, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.

**Verifiers**

- Record of reported grievances
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, and contractors, workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 2.6.4.** Fair compensation is provided to workers for work-related loss or damage of property and occupational disease or injuries.

**Verifiers**

- Documented evidence of fair compensation
- Interviews with workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

Refer to the Workers Compensation Act (2000) and the related regulations

**PRINCIPLE 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES' RIGHTS**

The Organization shall identify and uphold indigenous peoples' legal and customary rights of ownership, use and management of land, territories and resources affected by management activities.

**Criterion 3.1** The Organization shall identify the indigenous peoples that exist within the Management Unit or those that are affected by management activities. The Organization shall then, through engagement with these indigenous peoples, identify their rights of tenure, their rights of access to and use of forest resources and ecosystem services, their customary rights and legal rights and obligations that apply within the Management Unit. The Organization shall also identify areas where these rights are contested.

**Indicator 3.1.1** Indigenous peoples\* that may be affected by management activities are identified.

**Verifiers**

- Documented internationally accepted process of identifying the indigenous peoples
- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s, affected stakeholders and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

1. Refer to the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples
2. Indigenous peoples include: the Ik/Teuso in Mt. Timu CFR; the Tepeth in Moroto CFR; the Benets/Ndoboro in Mt Elgon National Park and the Batwa in Echuya CFR and Bwindi/Mugahinga National Park, and the Batwa from Semliki NP and North Rwenzori CFR. **See Glossary for the IPs of Uganda**

**Indicator 3.1.2 (a).** Through culturally appropriate engagement with the indigenous peoples, identified in 3.1.1, the following issues are documented and/or mapped:

1. Their legal and customary rights of tenure;
2. Their legal and customary access to, and use rights of the forest resources and ecosystem services;
3. Their legal and customary rights and obligations that apply;
4. The evidence supporting these rights and obligations;
5. Areas where rights are contested between indigenous peoples, governments and/or others.
6. Summary of the means by which the legal and customary rights and contested rights are addressed by The Organization\*.
7. The aspirations and goals of indigenous peoples related to management activities.

### Verifiers

- Documented indigenous peoples rights and obligations that include (1) - (5)
- Documented system of engagement
- Forest Management Plans and maps
- Interviews with representatives of indigenous peoples.

### Guidance:

1. **“Culturally appropriate engagement”**: The process was similar for all IPs, entailing three stages: Mobilization, conduct of meetings, documentation and follow-up arrangements.

- **Mobilization**: Prior information to the IPs is important - with a personal physical approach through a respected opinion leader (guard against mobilizing using phone calls). The purpose of the meeting should be clarified from the beginning, and the time and duration should be appropriate.
- **Conduct of the meeting**: The medium of communication should be appropriate - local language preferred, but use of English with interpretation is acceptable. The person chairing the meeting and one interpreting should be one of their own. Use of cameras/videos must be with prior consent. Focus group discussions are preferred for in depth discussions.
- **Documentation** - resolutions from the meetings should be summarized, recorded and read back to the participants. Attendance list kept.
- **Formation of committees** to follow up the outcomes and act as a conduit for feedback actions. Share contacts for future information sharing. They can also be engaged in formal or informal groups that are led by their leaders and organized by the IP.

2. **Tenure rights - Land ownership**:

The IPs have historically settled in areas which are now gazetted as protected areas - CFRs or NPs. Therefore they have customary claims arising from settling in the areas "from time immemorial". However, they do not hold legal claims over the land.

- The Iks and Tepeth are still living in the CFRs.
- The majority of the Benets were resettled on 6,000 ha degazetted from Mt Elgon NP for this purpose, but there are some still living within the periphery of the NP.
- All the Batwa have been removed from Bwindi and Mugahinga NPs; Echuya CFR; Semliki NP and Northern Rwenzori CFR. The majority have been resettled outside the protected areas through the NGOs such as the Bwindi Kellermann Foundation, and the Bwindi/Mugahinga Conservation Trust.

3. **Obligations of IPs in forest management**: Authorized co-management is based on MoUs (with UWA) or CFM agreement (with NFA). The respective obligations are specified in the relevant documents, e.g. for the Batwa in Echuya CFR.

**Indicator 3.1.2 (b). For LIOs and SLIMFs** Culturally appropriate ways of engaging the Indigenous Peoples are being practiced

### Verifiers

- Interviews with indigenous people

**Criterion 3.2** The Organization shall recognize and uphold the legal and customary rights of indigenous peoples to maintain control over management activities within or related to the Management Unit to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources and lands and territories. Delegation by indigenous peoples of control over management activities to third parties requires Free, Prior and Informed Consent.

**Indicator 3.2.1.(a)** Through culturally appropriate engagement Indigenous peoples are informed when, where and how they can comment on and request modification to management activities to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources, lands and territories.

**Verifiers**

- Mutually agreed guidelines for engagement
- Interviews with IPs and workers
- Monitoring reports
- Evidence of notices

**Guidance**

The engagement process establishes the mechanism for feedback and consequent information flow, usually through a selected committee.

**Indicator 3.2.1.(b)** The engagement process establishes the mechanism for feedback and consequent information flow

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 3.2.1.(c)** There is evidence that steps have been taken to address the views and requests of the Indigenous Peoples, and that feedback is provided in line with Free Prior Informed Consent practices

**Verifiers**

- Feedback mechanism
- Management Plans and Annual Work Plans
- Revised policies and strategies
- Monitoring reports
- Interviews with IPs and other stakeholders

**Indicator 3.2.2.** The legal and customary rights of indigenous peoples are not violated by the Organization.

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with IPs and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guide:** where the IPs were moved out of the protected area, resettled and/or compensated their customary rights over access and use of such protected area shall not be extinguished

**Indicator 3.2.3.** Where evidence exists that legal and customary rights of indigenous peoples related to management activities have been violated the situation is corrected, if necessary, through culturally appropriate engagement and/or through the dispute resolution process as required in Criteria 1.6 or 4.6.

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with the indigenous peoples and other stakeholders
- Evidence of correction of violations

**Indicator 3.2.4.** Free, prior and informed consent is granted by indigenous peoples prior to management activities that affect their identified rights through a process that includes:

- 1) Ensuring indigenous peoples\* know their rights and obligations regarding the resource;
- 2) Informing the indigenous peoples\* of the value, in economic, social and environmental terms, of the resource over which they are considering delegation of control;
- 3) Informing the indigenous peoples\* of their right to withhold or modify consent to the proposed management activities to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources, lands and territories\*; and
- 4) Informing the indigenous peoples\* of the current and future planned forest\* management activities.

**Verifiers**

- Documented processes for achieving FPIC
- Agreements signed in a public ceremony
- Interviews with representatives of indigenous peoples.

**Criterion 3.3** In the event of delegation of control over management activities, a binding agreement between The Organization and the indigenous peoples shall be concluded through Free, Prior and Informed Consent. The agreement shall define its duration, provisions for renegotiation, renewal, termination, economic conditions and other terms and conditions. The agreement shall make provision for monitoring by indigenous peoples of The Organization’s compliance with its terms and conditions.

**Indicator 3.3.1.** Where control over management activities has been granted through Free Prior and Informed Consent based on culturally appropriate engagement, the binding agreement contains the duration, provisions for renegotiation, renewal, termination, economic conditions and other terms and conditions.

**Verifiers**

- Documented process of negotiating the agreement
- Agreements signed by appointed representatives of the parties and witnesses in a public ceremony
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, representatives of indigenous peoples, and other stakeholders.



**Indicator 3.3.2.** Records of binding agreements are maintained.

**Verifiers**

- Records of the Agreements maintained by all the parties involved

**Indicator 3.3.3.** The binding agreement contains the provision for monitoring by Indigenous Peoples of The Organization's compliance with its terms and conditions.

**Verifiers**

- The Binding Agreement
- Evidence of monitoring by indigenous peoples

**Criterion 3.4** The Organization shall recognize and uphold the rights, customs and culture of indigenous peoples as defined in the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (2007) and ILO Convention 169 (1989) (C3.2 V4, revised to comply with FSC-POL-30-401, ILO 169 and UNDRIP).

**Indicator 3.4.1.** The rights, customs and culture of indigenous peoples as defined in UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169 are not violated by The Organization.

**Verifiers**

- Written commitment to implement UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other relevant stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guidance**

Ref to the UNDRIP and ILO Convention No. 169

**Indicator 3.4.2.** Where evidence that rights, customs and culture of indigenous peoples as defined in UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169, have been violated by the Organization the situation is documented including steps to restore these rights, customs and culture of indigenous peoples, to the satisfaction of the rights holders.

**Verifiers**

- Records on violation and steps taken to restore IP rights
- Interviews with the IPs and other relevant stakeholders
- Monitoring reports

**Criterion 3.5** The Organization, through engagement with indigenous peoples, shall identify sites which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance and for which these indigenous peoples hold legal or customary rights. These sites shall be recognized by The Organization and their management, and/or protection shall be agreed through engagement with these indigenous peoples.

**Indicator 3.5.1.** Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance for which indigenous peoples hold legal or customary rights are identified through culturally appropriate engagement.

**Verifiers**

- Documented processes of engagement
- Record of identified sites
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers, IPs and other stakeholders
- Field observation

**Guidance**

Sites of special interest:

1. For the Benets,
  - sites where they collect clay (or "white chalk") used in circumcision ceremonies;
  - sites with salty water which is believed to have medicinal attributes for treating livestock;
  - special caves for burials;
  - rivers for various rituals; and
  - The Kapkoros - the sites used for prayers, e.g. for rain and thanksgiving.
2. For the Ik and Tepeth:
  - forested areas referred to as "Akeriket" used as meeting places for elders - to resolve problems, conduct ceremonies and hold prayer;
  - sites with salty water, which they believe heals skin diseases and bad omen;
  - Caves - where rain-makers visit.
3. For the Batwa (or Basua) of Bundibugyo
  - The Hot-springs of Semliki
  - The *Kigelia* trees, near which their dead are usually buried

**Indicator 3.5.2.** Measures to protect such sites are agreed, documented and implemented through culturally appropriate engagement with indigenous peoples. When indigenous peoples determine that physical identification of sites in documentation or on maps would threaten the value or protection of the sites, then other means will be used

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Implementation reports
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, IPs and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 3.5.3.** Whenever sites of special cultural or ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance are newly observed or discovered, negotiations between the Organization and the indigenous peoples are initiated to agree on protective measures, otherwise activities cease within a period agreed upon by both parties.

**Verifiers**

- Records of new discoveries

- Interviews with the Organization’s workers, Indigenous Peoples and other stakeholder
- Field observations

**Guidance Note:**

Stopping management activities should depend on the value attachment by the IPs, the sensitivity and vulnerability of the site to destruction by continued activities, and the likelihood of promoting severe conflict. Otherwise, it would be a workable approach to initiate negotiations first between the Organization and the IPs once there is a new discovery.

**Criterion 3.6.** The Organization shall uphold the right of indigenous peoples to protect and utilize their traditional knowledge and shall compensate local communities for the utilization of such knowledge and their intellectual property. A binding agreement as per Criterion 3.3 shall be concluded between The Organization and the indigenous peoples for such utilization through Free, Prior and Informed Consent before utilization takes place, and shall be consistent with the protection of intellectual property rights.

**Indicator 3.6.1.** Traditional knowledge and intellectual property are protected and are only used when the acknowledged owner of that traditional knowledge and intellectual property have provided their Free, Prior and Informed Consent formalized through a binding agreement.

**Verifiers**

- Documented indigenous knowledge
- Documented process of engagement
- Agreements
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, IPs and other stakeholders

**Indicator 3.6.2.** Indigenous peoples are compensated according to the binding agreement reached through Free, Prior and Informed Consent for the use of traditional knowledge and intellectual property.

**Verifiers**

- Copies of agreement endorsed and maintained by representatives of all parties involved
- Evidence of compensation

**PRINCIPLE 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS**

The Organization shall contribute to maintaining or enhancing the social and economic wellbeing of local communities.

**Criterion 4.1** The Organization shall identify the local communities that exist within the Management Unit and those that are affected by management activities. The Organization shall then, through engagement with these local communities, identify their rights of tenure, their rights of access to and use of forest resources and ecosystem services, their customary rights and legal rights and obligations that apply within the Management Unit.

**Indicator 4.1.1** Local communities that exist in the Management Unit and those that may be affected by management activities are identified.

**Verifiers:**

- Documented internationally accepted process of identifying the local communities
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, local communities and other stakeholders
- Interview reports

**Indicator 4.1.2. (a)** Through approaches mutually agreed upon, culturally appropriate engagement with the local communities identified in 4.1.1, the following are documented and/or mapped:

- 1) Their legal and customary rights of tenure;
- 2) Their legal and customary access to, and use rights, of the forest resources and ecosystem services;
- 3) Their legal and customary rights and obligations that apply;
- 4) The evidence supporting these rights and obligations;
- 5) Areas where rights are contested between local communities, governments and/or others;
- 6) Summary of the means by which the legal and customary rights, and contested rights are addressed by The Organization; and
- 7) The aspirations and goals of local communities related to Management activities.

**Verifiers:**

- Documented local community rights and obligations that include (1) - (5)
- Documented system of engagement
- Forest Management Plans and maps
- Interviews with representatives of local communities.

**Guidance**

- In Uganda, the engagement process shall take into account:
- The varied nature of the communities even around one FMU
- Representation through methods agreeable to the communities

**Indicator 4.1.2. (a) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Through approaches agreed upon between the Organization and local communities, resource mapping is conducted and the rights, usage and responsibilities of relevant communities are defined

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of engagement with local communities
- Forest management Plan
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observation

**Criterion 4.2** The Organization shall recognize and uphold the legal and customary rights of local communities to maintain control over management activities within or related to the Management Unit to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources and lands and territories. Delegation by local communities of control over management activities to third parties requires Free, Prior and Informed Consent.

**Indicator 4.2.1.** Through culturally appropriate engagement, local communities are informed of when, where and how they can comment on and request modification to management activities to the extent necessary to protect their rights.

**Verifiers**

- Mutually agreed guidelines for engagement
- evidence that steps have been taken to address the views & requests of the local communities and that feedback is provided in line with FPIC practices
- Interviews with local communities and workers
- Monitoring reports
- Evidence of engagement

**Indicator 4.2.2.** The legal and customary rights of local communities to maintain control over management activities are not violated by The Organization.

**Verifiers**

- MoUs with local communities
- Interviews with local communities and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guide:**

Ref: NFTP, which provides a right to communities to remove dry wood and bamboo from forest reserves free of any charges

**Indicator 4.2.3.** Where evidence exists that legal and customary rights of local communities related to management activities have been violated the situation is corrected, if necessary, through culturally appropriate engagement and/or through the dispute resolution process in Criteria 1.6 or 4.6

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of correction of violations
- Interviews with the local communities and other stakeholders

**Indicator 4.2.4. (a)** Free, prior and informed consent is granted by local communities prior to management activities that affect their identified rights through a process that includes:

1. Ensuring local communities know their rights and obligations regarding the resource;
2. Informing the local communities of the value, in economic, social and environmental terms, of the resource over which they are considering delegation of control;
3. Informing the local communities of their right to withhold or modify consent to the proposed management activities to the extent necessary to protect rights, resources; and

4. Informing the local communities of the current and future planned forest management activities;

**Verifiers**

- Documented processes for achieving FPIC
- Agreements signed in a public ceremony
- Interviews with representatives of local communities.

**Indicator 4.2.4. (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** The Organization and local communities have mutual agreement that requires:

1. definition of legal and customary rights and responsibilities;
2. planned management activities that could affect those rights; and
3. Informing the local communities of their right to withhold or modify consent to the proposed management activities to the extent necessary to protect their rights and resources

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Criterion 4.3** The Organization shall provide reasonable opportunities for employment, training and other services to local communities, contractors and suppliers proportionate to scale and intensity of its management activities.

**Indicator 4.3.1 (a)** Reasonable opportunities are communicated and provided to local communities, local contractors and local suppliers for:

- 1) Employment,
- 2) Training, and
- 3) Other services

**Verifiers**

- Record of identification process for beneficiaries
- Evidence of communication of opportunities
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers, local communities and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

*LIOs* should give preference to local people and services, or, in the case of group certification, to group members

**High Potential Impact Organizations** should promote the local provision of employment and services. In order to be able to employ locally for regular activities, training opportunities may need to be provided in order to build up local capacity and availability in the medium to long term

**Indicator 4.3.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Preference for employment and other services is given to local communities and local service providers

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with the Organization’s workers, local communities and other stakeholders

**Criterion 4.4** The Organization shall implement additional activities, through engagement with local communities that contribute to their social and economic development, proportionate to the scale, intensity and socio-economic impact of its management activities.

**Indicators 4.4.1 (a) Opportunities for local social and economic development are** identified through culturally appropriate engagement with local communities and other relevant organizations.

**Verifiers**

- A local social-economic Development Strategy
- Interviews with the organization’s workers local communities and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

The Development Plan should include activities that are:

- a) Requested by free and collective decisions of the local communities;
- b) Priorities for the communities;
- c) Sustainable in the long term;
- d) Beneficial to the local communities as a whole;
- e) Relevant to the poverty status of the local communities;
- f) Distributed equitably within the local communities.

**Indicator 4.4.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Opportunities for local social and economic development are known by the Organization’s workers and local communities

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with the organization’s workers local communities and other stakeholders

**Indicator 4.4.2 (a)** Projects and additional activities are implemented and / or supported that contribute to local social and economic benefits and are proportionate to the socio-economic impact of management activities.

**Verifiers**

- Record of projects
- Field observations
- Interviews with local communities

**Indicator 4.4.2 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs:** Activities are implemented and / or supported that contribute to local social and economic benefits.

**Verifiers**

- Record of projects

- Field observations
- Interviews with local communities

**Criterion 4.5** The Organization, through engagement with local communities, shall take action to identify, avoid and mitigate significant negative social, environmental and economic impacts of its management activities on affected communities. The action taken shall be proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk of those activities and negative impacts.

**Indicators 4.5.1 Through culturally appropriate engagement with local communities, measures are implemented to identify, avoid and mitigate negative social, environmental and economic impacts of management activities.**

**Verifiers**

- Record of engagement
- Documented mitigation measures
- Forest management plan
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers, local communities and other stakeholder
- Routine monitoring Reports
- Field Observations

**Guidance:**

The engagement includes, at a minimum:

- Informing the affected communities in a proactive manner on their special rights related to FSC certified Management Units;
- Providing capacity building to the affected communities to participate in impact assessment, FM planning and annual monitoring;
- Mechanisms for resolving grievances and providing fair compensation on e.g. spoiled drinking water, lost NTFPs, damage to community roads, etc. are agreed in a participatory manner

**Criterion 4.6** The Organization, through engagement with local communities, shall have mechanisms for resolving grievances and providing fair compensation to local communities and individuals with regard to the impacts of management activities of The Organization.

**Indicator 4.6.1 (a)** A publicly available dispute resolution process is in place, developed through culturally appropriate engagement with local communities.

**Verifiers**

- Documented process for dispute resolution
- Evidence of public availability of the dispute resolution process
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers, local communities and other stakeholders



**Indicator 4.6.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** A publicly available dispute resolution process is known to the Organization's workers and the local communities

**Verifiers**

- Interview with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 4.6.2** Grievances related to the impacts of management activities are responded to in a timely manner, and are either resolved or in the dispute resolution process.

**Verifiers**

- Processes and guidelines
- Evidence of addressing grievances
- Interviews with the Organization's workers, local communities and other stakeholders

**Indicator 4.6.3** An up to date record of grievances related to the impacts of management activities is held including:

1. Steps taken to resolve grievances
2. Outcomes of all disputes resolution processes including fair compensation to local communities and individuals; and
3. Unresolved disputes, the reasons they are not resolved and how they will be resolved.

**Verifiers**

- Record of grievances
- Grievance response plan

**Indicator 4.6.4** Operations cease in areas while disputes exist of:

1. Substantial magnitude;
2. Substantial duration;
3. Involving a *significant*\* number of interests

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with
- Organization\*'s worker\*s
- Interviews of other stakeholders
- Complete record of a history of disputes

**Criterion 4.7** The Organization, through engagement with local communities, shall identify sites which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance, and for which these local communities hold legal or customary rights. These sites shall be recognized by The Organization, and their management and/or protection shall be agreed through engagement with these local communities.

**Indicator 4.7.1 (a)** Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance, for which local communities hold legal or customary rights are identified through culturally appropriate

engagement, and are recognized by The Organization.

**Verifiers**

- Documented processes of engagement
- Record of identified sites
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers, local communities and other stakeholders
- Field observation

**Indicator 4.7.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** The Organization and communities have through a consultative and participative process identified sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance, and documented them in the management plan

**Verifiers**

- Management Plan

**Indicator 4.7.2 (a)** Measures to protect such sites are agreed, documented and implemented through culturally appropriate engagement with local communities. When local communities determine that physical identification of sites in documentation or on maps would threaten the value or protection of the sites, then other means will be used.

**Verifiers**

- Record of the identified measures
- Forest Management Plan
- Evidence of implementation
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, local communities and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 4.7.2 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Measures are in place to protect those sites from management impacts

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Filed observation

**Indicator 4.7.3** Whenever sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance are newly observed or discovered, negotiations between the Organization and the local communities are initiated to mutually agree on protective measures as directed by local and national laws.

**Verifiers**

- Evidence negotiations and mutual agreement
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers, local communities and other stakeholder
- Field observations

**Criterion 4.8** The Organization shall uphold the right of local communities to protect and utilize their traditional knowledge and shall compensate local communities for the utilization of such knowledge and their intellectual property. A binding agreement as per Criterion 3.3 shall be concluded between The Organization and the local communities for such utilization through Free, Prior and Informed Consent before utilization takes place, and shall be consistent with the protection of intellectual property rights.

**Indicator 4.8.1** Traditional knowledge and intellectual property are protected and are only used when the owners of the traditional knowledge and intellectual property have provided their Free, Prior and Informed Consent formalized through a binding agreement.

**Verifiers**

- Documented indigenous knowledge
- Documented process of engagement
- Agreements
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, local communities and other stakeholders

**Indicator 4.8.2** Local communities are compensated according to the binding agreement reached through Free, Prior and Informed Consent for the use of traditional knowledge and intellectual property.

**Verifiers**

- Copies of agreement endorsed and maintained by representatives of all parties involved
- Evidence of compensation

**PRINCIPLE 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST.**

The Organization\* shall efficiently manage the range of multiple products and services of the Management Unit\* to maintain or enhance long term economic viability\* and the range of social and environmental benefits.

**Criterion 5.1** The Organization shall identify, produce, or enable the production of, diversified benefits and/or products, based on the range of resources and ecosystem services existing in the Management Unit in order to strengthen and diversify the local economy proportionate to the scale and intensity of management activities.

**Indicator 5.1.1** The range of resources and ecosystem services that could strengthen and diversify the local economy are identified.

**Verifiers**

- Record of products and services
- Forest management plan
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

Ecosystem services might include:

- (i) Purification of air and water
- (ii) Regulation of water flow
- (iii) Detoxification and decomposition of wastes
- (iv) Generation and renewal of soil and soil fertility
- (v) Pollination of crops and natural vegetation
- (vi) Control of agricultural pests
- (vii) Dispersal of seeds and translocation of nutrients
- (viii) Maintenance of biodiversity
- (ix) Partial climatic stabilization
- (x) Moderation of temperature extremes
- (xi) Wind breaks
- (xii) Support for diverse human cultures
- (xiii) Aesthetic beauty and landscape enrichment

**Indicator 5.1.2** Consistent with management objectives, the identified benefits and products are produced by The Organization and/or made available for others to produce, to strengthen and diversify the local economy.

**Verifiers**

- Records of organizations involved in the production processes
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Forest Management Plan

**Indicator 5.1.3** When The Organization makes FSC promotional claims regarding the maintenance and/or enhancement of ecosystem services, a programme conforming to existing international best practices is developed and implemented.

**Verifiers**

- FMPs
- Annual management plans
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guidance:**

Principles and Concepts underpinning PES include:

- (i) **Voluntary:** stakeholders enter into PES agreements on a voluntary basis;
- (ii) **Beneficiary pays:** payments are made by the beneficiaries of ecosystem services (individuals, communities and businesses or governments acting on behalf of various parties);
- (iii) **Direct payment:** payments are made directly to ecosystem service providers (in practice, often via an intermediary or broker);
- (iv) **Additionality:** payments are made for actions over-and-above those which land or resource managers would generally be expected to undertake (note that precisely what constitutes additionality will vary from case-to-case but the actions paid for must at the very least go beyond

regulatory compliance);

- (v) **Conditionality:** payments are dependent on the delivery of ecosystem service benefits. In practice, payments are more often based on the implementation of management practices which the contracting parties agree are likely to give rise to these benefits;
- (vi) **Ensuring permanence:** management interventions paid for by beneficiaries should not be readily reversible, thus providing continued service provision; and
- (vii) **Avoiding leakage:** PES schemes should be set up to avoid leakage, whereby securing an ecosystem

**Criterion 5.2** The Organization shall normally harvest products and services from the Management Unit at or below a level which can be permanently sustained.

**Indicator 5.2.1 (a)** Timber harvesting levels are based on an analysis of current Best Available Information on growth and yield; inventory of the forest; mortality rates; and maintenance of ecosystem functions

**Verifiers**

- Documented processes or systems for establishing harvesting rates
- Forest Management Plan
- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

1. See Annex J for "Best available Information" for Standard Potential Impact Organizations.
2. External experts or specialist are usually engaged (e.g. in timber inventory).
3. Source of Best Available Information includes:
  - A Guide to the Management of Tropical Moist Forest For Timber Production
  - Permanent Sample Plot (PSP) data
  - Inventory data
  - ISSIMI data
  - Specialist studies

**Indicator 5.2.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Timber harvesting levels are estimated using Best Available Information on timber yield and maintenance of ecosystem functions.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

1. The "Best available Information" for Low Potential Impact Organizations is described in Annex J:
2. Ref: *Guidelines For Management of Private Natural Forests In Uganda*

**Indicator 5.2.2 (a)** Based on the timber harvesting level analysis, a maximum allowable annual cut for timber is determined that does not exceed the harvest levels that can be permanently sustained

including ensuring that:

**For natural forests:**

- Sawlog Felling Cycle is  $\geq 30$  years;
- Sawlog Harvesting  $\leq 60\text{m}^3/\text{ha}$  over the Felling Cycle; and
- the trees felled are not of less than the minimum girth prescribed in the forestry regulations for the species

**Verifiers**

- A documented system for determining the maximum Annual Allowable Cut
- Documented maximum Allowable Annual Cut
- Interview with Organization's workers

**Reference:** National Forestry and Tree Planting Regulations (2016) for the Schedule on minimum girth for timber tree species

**Indicator 5.2.2 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Based on the timber harvesting level estimates, a maximum allowable annual cut for timber is determined that does not exceed the harvest levels that can be permanently sustained including ensuring that:

**For natural forests:**

- Sawlog Felling Cycle is  $\geq 30$  years;
- Sawlog Harvesting  $\leq 30\text{m}^3/\text{ha}$  over the Felling Cycle in natural forests; and
- the trees felled are not of less than the minimum girth prescribed in the forestry regulations for the species

**Verifiers**

- Estimated maximum Allowable Annual Cut
- Interviews with the Organization's workers

**Indicator 5.2.3 (a)** Actual annual harvest levels for timber are recorded and the harvest over a defined period does not exceed the allowable cut determined in 5.2.2a for the same defined period.

**Verifiers**

- Records of timber harvesting compared with estimated AAC
- Interview with Organization's worker

**Guidance:**

Refer to the SIR model which indicates the thresholds for medium impact organizations (MIO) and low impact organizations (LIOs)

**Indicator 5.2.3 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs:** Actual annual harvest levels for timber are recorded and the harvest over a defined period does not exceed the allowable cut determined in 5.2.2b for the same defined period.

**Verifiers**

- Records of timber harvesting
- Interview with Organization's worker

**Indicator 5.2.4 (a)** For extraction of commercially harvested non-timber forest products under The Organization's control a sustainable level is calculated and adhered to. Sustainable harvest levels are based on Best Available Information.

**Verifiers**

- Documented process for establishing harvesting rates for each product
- Harvesting rates
- Harvesting records
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

1. The major marketable NTFP in Uganda include, but not limited to:
  - rattan canes,
  - bamboo,
  - palms (Borrassus & other palms),
  - sand and stones,
  - honey,
  - fruits,
2. Refer to the SIR model which indicates the thresholds for Standard Potential impact organizations and low potential impact organizations (LIOs)

**Indicator 5.2.4 (b)** Extraction of NTFPs is regularly monitored with a view to establishing more precise sustainable extraction levels

**Verifiers**

- Harvesting reports for NTFPs
- monitoring reports
- Interviews with Organization's worker\*s and other stakeholders

**Criterion 5.3** The Organization shall demonstrate that the positive and negative externalities of operations are included in the management plan.

**Indicator 5.3.1** The activities required to prevent and mitigate negative impacts have been identified and documented in the management plan

**Verifiers**

- Documented impacts
- Documented strategies for dealing with them
- Forest Management Plan
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Guide:**

Possible impacts may include:

- damage to water quality and quantity,

- soil erosion,
- public works,
- Social stress, etc.

**Indicator 5.3.2** Benefits related to positive social and environment impacts of management activities are identified and included in the management plan.

**Verifiers**

- Forest management plan
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Criterion 5.4** The Organization shall use local processing, local services, and local value adding to meet the requirements of The Organization where these are available, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk. If these are not locally available, The Organization shall make reasonable attempts to help establish these services.

**Indicator 5.4.1** Where cost, quality and capacity of non-local and local options are at least equivalent, local goods, services, processing, and value added facilities are used

**Verifiers**

- Record of criteria for evaluating what to buy
- Price lists of goods and services
- Procurement policy
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

In this context, “local” is defined as “District or Districts within which the FMU is located”

**Indicator 5.4.2** Reasonable attempts are made to establish and encourage capacity where local goods, services, processing and value-added facilities are not available.

**Verifiers**

- Records of capacity building actions
- Interviews of organization’s workers, and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guidance:**

The attempts could include training, establishment of cooperative savings & credits organizations, establishing links with the relevant players (e.g. NGOs, government institutions)



**Criterion 5.5** The Organization shall demonstrate through its planning and expenditures proportionate to scale, intensity and risk, its commitment to long-term economic viability.

**Indicator 5.5.1 (a)** Sufficient funds are allocated to implement the Management Plan in order to meet this standard and to ensure long-term economic viability.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- A comprehensive accounting system
- A Strategic Investment Plan
- Research and Development Strategy

**Indicator 5.5.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Sources of funds to implement the Management Plan in order to meet this standard and to ensure long-term economic viability are secured.

**Verifiers**

- Documentation
- Interviews with the Organization's workers

**Indicator 5.5.2 (a)** Expenditures and investments are made to implement the Management Plan in order to meet this standard and to ensure long-term economic viability.

**Verifiers**

- Expenditure returns/financial statements
- Evidence of re-investments
- Interviews with the Organization's Executives
- Field observation

**Indicator 5.5.2 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** An annual Plan and budget is in place, that incorporates expected costs and revenues

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Annual Plan and Budget
- Evidence that expenditure matches income

**PRINCIPLE 6: ENVIRONMENTAL VALUES AND IMPACTS.**

The Organization shall maintain, conserve and/or restore ecosystem services and environmental values of the Management Unit, and shall avoid, repair or mitigate negative environmental impacts.

**Criterion 6.1** The Organization shall assess environmental values in the Management Unit and those values outside the Management Unit potentially affected by management activities. This assessment shall be undertaken with a level of detail, scale and frequency that is proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk of management activities, and is sufficient for the purpose of deciding the necessary conservation measures, and for detecting and monitoring possible negative impacts of those activities.

**Indicator 6.1.1** Best Available Information is used to identify environmental values within, and, where potentially affected by management activities, outside of the Management Unit.

**Verifiers**

- Assessment Reports
- Forest Management Plan

**Guide:**

See **Annex J** for a list of possible sources of Best Available Information

**Indicator 6.1.2** Assessments of environmental values are conducted with a level of detail and frequency so that:

- Impacts of management activities on the identified environmental values can be assessed as per Criterion 6.2;
- Risks to environmental values can be identified as per Criterion 6.2;
- Necessary conservation measures to protect values can be identified as per Criterion 6.3; and
- Monitoring of impacts or environmental changes can be conducted as per Principle 8.

**Verifiers**

- Assessment Reports
- Forest Management Plan

**Criterion 6.2** Prior to the start of site-disturbing activities, The Organization shall identify and assess the scale, intensity and risk of potential impacts of management activities on the identified environmental values.

**Indicator 6.2.1 (a)** An environmental impact assessment identifies potential present and future impacts of all management activities on environmental values from the stand level to the landscape level.

**Verifiers**

- Environment Impact Assessment Report
- Forest Management Plan
- Operational plans
- Field observations

**Guidance**

Section 19 of the National Environment Act

**Indicator 6.2.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Potential impacts of management activities on environmental values are identified before the commencement of site disturbing operations

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Interviews with the organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 6.2.2** The environmental impact assessment identifies and assesses the impacts of the management activities prior to the start of site-disturbing activities.

**Verifiers**

- Environmental Impact Assessment Reports
- Forest Management Plan

**Guidance:**

- Third Schedule of the National Environment Act lists projects for which an EIA is required
- Section 6 of the Guidelines For Management of Private Natural Forests In Uganda gives guidance on how small holders can proceed within the law

**Criterion 6.3** The Organization shall identify and implement effective actions to prevent negative impacts of management activities on the environmental values, and to mitigate and repair those that occur, proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk of these impacts

**Indicator 6.3.1** Management activities are planned and implemented to prevent negative impacts and to protect *environmental values*\*.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Routine Reports

- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 6.3.2** Management activities prevent negative impacts to environmental values\*.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Routine Reports
- Interviews with the Organization\*’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 6.3.3** Where negative impacts to *environmental values\** occur, measures are adopted to prevent further damage, and negative impacts are *mitigated\** and/or repaired.

**Verifiers**

- Annual Work Plans and Budgets
- Monitoring Reports
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Criterion 6.4** The Organization\* shall\* protect rare species\* and threatened species\* and their habitats\* in the Management Unit\* through conservation zones\*, protection areas\*, connectivity\* through conservation zones\*, protection areas\*, connectivity\* and/or (where necessary) other direct measures for their survival and viability. These measures shall\* be proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities and to the conservation\* status and ecological requirements of the rare and threatened species\*. The Organization\* shall\* take into account the geographic range and ecological requirements of rare and threatened species\*beyond the boundary of the Management Unit\*, when determining the measures to be taken inside the Management Unit\*.

**Indicator 6.4.1 (a)** Best Available Information is used to identify rare, threatened and endangered species\*, and their habitats\*, including CITES species (where applicable) and those listed on national, regional and local lists of rare and threatened species\* that are present or likely to be present within and adjacent to the Management Unit\*.

**Verifiers**

- A list of rare, threatened and endangered species
- Study Reports
- Monitoring reports
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

See **Annex J** for a list of possible sources of Best Available Information

**Indicator 6.4.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Best Available Information is used to identify rare, threatened and endangered species\*, and their habitats\*, including CITES species (where applicable) and those listed on national, regional and local lists of rare and threatened species\* that are present or likely to be present within and adjacent to the Management Unit\*.

**Verifiers**

- A list of rare, threatened and endangered species
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

See **Annex J** for a list of possible sources of Best Available Information

**Indicator 6.4.2** Potential impacts of management activities on rare, threatened and endangered species\* and their conservation\* status and habitats\* are identified and management activities are modified to avoid negative impacts.

**Verifiers**

- Study Reports
- Forest management plans
- Monitoring reports

**Indicator 6.4.3 (a)** The rare, threatened and endangered species\* and their habitats\* are protected, including through the provision of conservation zones\*, protection areas\*, connectivity\*, and other direct means for their survival and viability, such as the species' recovery programs.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring Reports
- Maps
- Field observations
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Guide:**

- National list of rare and threatened species
- For forests, habitats include strict nature reserves & their buffer zones, National Parks and Wildlife Reserves which are protected by law

**Indicator 6.4.3 (b)** Measures implemented to protect the rare threatened and endangered species\* and their habitats\*, include a minimum of:

- Management activities scheduled to avoid disturbance during nesting or fruiting seasons;
- use of reduced impact harvesting to protect nesting and breeding sites;
- Establishment of conservation zones and protection areas; and
- Designing mitigations measures for specific species and habitats.

**Verifiers**

- Field observations
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guide**

- Reduced impact harvesting is based on forest prospecting prior to harvesting, and uses this data to design a layout of felling compartments and inventory units, and also to plan the timber harvesting operations
- Refer to NFA guideline for management of production zones in tropical moist forest

**Indicator 6.4.4 (a)** Hunting, fishing, trapping and collection of nationally “critically endangered” and “endangered” categories of species\*is prevented.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring Reports
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

1. Where a species is endangered or critically endangered globally, but is stable or has recovered in Uganda, it does no harm if it is harvested using practices that will maintain or even improve stability
2. Hunting, fishing, trapping and collection of globally endangered or critically endangered species can be permitted in Uganda where there is sufficient evidence to show that such species is stable or has recovered, and there is no harm if it is harvested using practices that maintain or even improve stability

**Indicator 6.4.4 (b) Harvesting** of species in the nationally “vulnerable”, “near threatened” or “of least concern” categories is done only after objectively verifiable scientific studies have shown that the species is stable in Uganda or has recovered.

**Verifiers**

1. Reports of studies through which the Red List status of each species are established
2. Harvesting records
3. Monitoring Reports

**Guidance**

Guide needed to cover LIOs (small operations)

- See Nationally Threatened Species for Uganda, 2016 and any subsequent revisions
- The studies should have been done according to the Guidelines for Application Of IUCN Red List Criteria at Regional and National Levels (a version that is current at the time the particular study was undertaken)
- Verification of the studies that established the sustainable harvesting levels done through validation meetings attended by the key stakeholders that are relevant to the particular species

**Indicator 6.4.4 (c)** Harvesting of species in the nationally “vulnerable”, “near threatened” or “of least concern” categories is done in such a way that the population of the species is increasing

**Verifiers**

- Cumulative records of the population levels of the species
- Harvesting Plans
- FMPs

**Indicator 6.4.4 (d)** Where populations of the species being harvested within the MU shows a decline over a three year period, harvesting ceases and management actions are undertaken to allow populations to recover

**Verifiers**

- Cumulative records of the population levels of the species
- Annual work plans
- Revisions in the FMPs

**Criterion 6.5** The Organization\* shall\* identify and protect representative sample areas of native ecosystems\* and/or restore them to more natural conditions\*. Where representative sample areas do not exist or are insufficient, The Organization shall\* restore a proportion of the Management Unit\* to more natural conditions\*. The size of the areas and the measures taken for their protection or restoration, including within plantation, shall\* be proportionate to the conservation\* status and value of the ecosystems\* at the landscape\* level, and the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities.

**Indicator 6.5.1** Best Available Information\* is used to identify native ecosystems\* that exist, or would exist under natural conditions\* within the Management Unit\*.

**Verifiers**

- Study Report
- Forest management plans

- Field Monitoring reports
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

See **Annex J** for possible sources of Best Available Information

**Indicator 6.5.2** *Representative sample areas\** of native ecosystems\* are protected, where they exist.

**Verifiers**

- Forest management plans
- Forest resource Maps
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers
- Field observations

**Guidance**

- Ref: Forest Nature Conservation Master Plan.
- In some CFRs biodiversity conservation zones have been set aside with the aim of achieving 20% of the whole area being a strict nature reserve and 30% of the whole area a buffer zone. The remaining 50% is left as the Production Zone

**Indicator 6.5.3** Where representative sample areas\* do not exist, or where existing sample areas inadequately represent native ecosystems\*, or are otherwise insufficient, a proportion of the Management Unit\* is restored\* to more natural conditions\*.

**Verifiers**

- Specialized study Reports
- Maps
- Forest Management Plan
- Field observations
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers

**Guidance:**

In some CFRs biodiversity conservation zones have been set aside with the aim of achieving 20% of the whole area being a strict nature reserve and 30% of the whole area a buffer zone

Ref: Nature conservation master plan of Uganda 2006

**Indicator 6.5.4** The size of the *Representative Sample Areas\** and/or *restoration\** areas is proportionate to the *conservation\** status and value of the *ecosystems\** at the *landscape\** level, the size of the *Management Unit\** and the *intensity\** of *forest\** management.



**Verifiers**

- Maps
- Forest Management Plan
- Field observations
- Interviews with the Organization's workers

**Indicator 6.5.5** Representative Sample Areas\* in combination with other components of the conservation areas network\* comprise a minimum 10% area of the Management Unit\*.

**Verifiers**

- Maps
- Forest Management Plan
- Field observations
- Interviews with the Organization's workers

**Criterion 6.6** The Organization\* shall\* effectively maintain the continued existence of naturally occurring native species and genotypes\*, and prevent losses of biological diversity\*, especially through habitat\* management in the Management Unit\*. The Organization\* shall\* demonstrate that effective measures are in place to manage and control hunting, fishing, trapping and collecting.

**Indicator 6.6.1** Management activities maintain the plant communities and *habitat features\** found within native *ecosystems\** in which the *Management Unit\** is located.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- maps
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 6.6.2** Where past management has eliminated plant communities or *habitat features\**, management activities aimed at re-establishing such *habitats\** are implemented.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- maps
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 6.6.3 Management** maintains, enhances, or restores\* habitat features\* associated with native ecosystems\*, to support the diversity of naturally occurring species and their genetic diversity.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- maps
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 6.6.4** Effective measures are taken to manage and control hunting, fishing, trapping and collecting activities to ensure that naturally occurring native species\*, their diversity within species and their natural distribution are maintained.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guidance:**

See Guidance on Species that are threatened

**Indicator 6.6.5** Mechanisms for wildlife *protection\** are in place: Applicable national and/or international regulations on *protection\**, hunting and trade in animal species or parts (trophies) *shall\** be known and complied with

**Verifiers**

- Policies and laws
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring reports

**Guidance**

Uganda Wildlife Act 1996 provides for prohibited and allowed activities

**Indicator 6.6.5** Except where there is legal authorization, an internal regulation is in place banning and punishing the transportation of and trade in bush meat and firearms in facilities and vehicles of *The Organization\**

**Verifiers**

- Policies and laws
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring reports

**Indicator 6.6.7** A system of regular and punctual controls to ensure hunting policies are respected is implemented;

**Verifiers**

- Policies and laws
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring reports

**Guidance**

Uganda Wildlife Act (1996) provides for the controlling role of Uganda Wildlife Authority

**Indicator 6.6.8 Effective** mitigation measures are in place to ensure that *workers\** do not increase hunting trapping or collecting of bush meat or wild fish.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Administrative guidelines

**Guidance**

“workers” include the executives of the Organisation, as well as casual and permanent labourers in this context

**Criterion 6.7** The Organization\* shall\* protect or restore natural water courses, water bodies, riparian zones and their connectivity\*. The Organization\* shall\* avoid negative impacts on water quality and quantity and mitigate and remedy those that occur.

**Indicator 6.7.1** In line with the National Environment Act and the associated regulations and guidelines, protection\* measures are implemented to protect natural watercourses\*, water bodies\*, riparian zones\* and their connectivity, including water quantity and water quality

**Verifiers**

- Record of regular water quality sampling and analysis
- Field observations
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports

**Guide:**

1. The National Environment Act requires a distance of 50 metres for streams, 100 metres for rivers and 200 metres for lakes
2. In Uganda Stock Survey systems for harvesting trees in natural forests does not allow harvesting

within 30 metres of water bodies

**Indicator 6.7.2** Where implemented protection\* measures do not protect watercourses\*, water bodies\*, riparian zones\* and their connectivity\*, water quantity or water quality from impacts of forest\* management, restoration activities are implemented

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Operational Plans
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s and other stakeholders
- Field observation

**Indicator 6.7.3** Where natural watercourses, water bodies\*, riparian zones\* and their connectivity\*, water quantity or water quality have been damaged by past activities on land and water by The Organization\*, restoration activities\* are implemented.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Operational Plans
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s and other stakeholders
- Field observation

**Indicator 6.7.4** Where continued degradation exists to watercourses\*, water bodies\*, water quantity and water quality caused by previous managers and the activities of third parties, measures are implemented that prevent or mitigate this degradation.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Operational Plans
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s, local experts and relevant stakeholders
- Field observation

**Criterion 6.8** The Organization\* shall\* manage the landscape\* in the Management Unit\* to maintain and/or restore a varying mosaic of species, sizes, ages, spatial scales and regeneration cycles appropriate for the landscape values\* in that region, and for enhancing environmental and economic resilience\*.

**Indicator 6.8.1** A varying mosaic of species, sizes, ages, spatial *scales\** is maintained appropriate to the *landscape\**

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Guidelines
- Forest Management Plan and maps
- Field observation

**Indicator 6.8.2** The mosaic of species, sizes, ages, spatial scales and regeneration cycles is *restored\** where it has not been maintained appropriate to the *landscape\**

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Guidelines
- Forest Management Plan and maps
- Operational Plan
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field observation

**Criterion 6.9** The Organization\* shall\* not convert natural forest\* to plantations\*, nor natural forests\* or plantations\* on sites directly converted from natural forest to no-forest land use, except when the conversion:

- a) Affects a very limited portion of the area of the Management Unit\*, and
- b) Will produce clear, substantial, additional, secure long-term conservation\* benefits in the Management Unit\*, and
- c) Does not damage or threaten High Conservation Values\*, nor any sites or resources necessary to maintain or enhance those High Conservation Values\*.

**Indicator 6.9.1** There is no conversion of natural forest\* to plantations\*, nor conversion of natural forests\* to non-forest\* land use, nor conversion of plantations\* on sites directly converted from natural forest\* to non-forest\* land use, except when the conversion:

- 1) Affects a very limited portion\* of the Management Unit\*, and
- 2) The conversion will produce clear, substantial, additional, secure, long-term conservation\* benefits in the Management Unit\*; and
- 3) Does not damage or threaten High Conservation Values\*, nor any sites or resources necessary to

maintain or enhance those High Conservation Values\*.

**Verifiers**

- Maps
- Forest management Plans
- Field Observations
- Interviews with organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

“Limited portion\* of the Management Unit\*” is interpreted in line with FSC Policy of Excision (FSC-POL-20-003)

**Criterion 6.10** Management Units\* containing plantations\* that were established on areas converted from natural forest\* after November 1994 shall\* not qualify for certification, except where:

- a) Clear and sufficient evidence is provided that The Organization\* was not directly or indirectly responsible for the conversion, or
- b) The conversion affected a very limited portion of the area of the Management Unit\* and is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure long term conservation\* benefits in the Management Unit\*.

**Indicator 6.10.1** Based on *Best Available Information\**, accurate data is compiled on all conversions since 1994.

**Verifiers**

- Records of areas converted
- Maps
- Forest management Plans

**Guidance:**

See **Annex J** for sources of *Best Available Information\**

**Indicator 6.10.2** Areas converted from natural forest\* to plantation\* since November 1994 are not certified, except where:

- 1) The Organization\* provides clear and sufficient evidence that it was not directly or indirectly responsible for the conversion; or
- 2) The conversion is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure, long-term conservation\* benefits in the Management Unit\*; and
- 3) The total area of plantation\* on sites converted from natural forest\* since November 1994 is less than 5% of the total area of the Management Unit\*.

**Verifiers**

- Maps
- Forest management Plans
- Field Observations
- Records of areas converted

**Guidance:**

“Directly or indirectly responsible for the conversion” is interpreted within the context of the Policy for the Association of Organizations with FSC (FSC-POL-01-004 V2-0 EN)

**PRINCIPLE 7: MANAGEMENT PLANNING**

The Organization\* shall have a management plan\* consistent with its policies and objectives\* and proportionate to scale, intensity and risks\* of its management activities. The management plan shall be implemented and kept up to date based on monitoring information in order to promote adaptive management\*. The associated planning and procedural documentation shall be sufficient to guide staff, inform affected stakeholders\* and interested stakeholders\* and to justify management decisions.

**Criterion 7.1.** The Organization\* shall, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of its management activities, set policies (visions and values) and objectives\* for management, which are environmentally sound, socially beneficial and economically viable. Summaries of these policies and objectives\* shall be incorporated into the management plan\*, and publicized.

**Indicator 7.1.1 (a)** Policies (vision and values) that contribute to meeting the requirements of this standard are described in the management plan\*.

**Verifiers**

- Documented policy
- Forest management Plan

**Indicator 7.1.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** The Organization’s commitment to environmental, social and economically viable management is stated in the Forest Management Plan

**Verifiers**

- Forest management Plan

**Indicator 7.1.2** Specific, operational management objectives\* that address the requirements of this standard are presented in the management plan\*.

<p><b>Verifiers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forest management Plan</li> </ul>
<p><b>Indicator 7.1.3 (a)</b> Summaries of the defined policies and management objectives* are included in the management plan* and publicized.</p> <p><b>Verifiers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Management Plan</li> </ul>
<p><b>Indicator 7.1.3 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs</b> Summaries of management objectives* are included in the management plan*</p> <p><b>Verifiers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Management Plan</li> </ul>

<p><b>Criterion 7.2.</b> The Organization* shall have and implement a management plan* for the Management Unit* which is fully consistent with the policies and objectives* as established according to Criterion* 7.1. The management plan* shall describe the natural resources that exist in the Management Unit* and explain how the plan will meet the FSC certification requirements. The management plan* shall cover forest management planning and social management planning proportionate to scale*, intensity* and risk* of the planned activities.</p>
<p><b>Indicator 7.2.1 (a).</b> The <i>management plan</i>* includes management actions, procedures, strategies and measures to achieve the management objective.</p> <p><b>Verifiers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forest management Plan</li> <li>• Business Plan</li> </ul>
<p><b>Indicator 7.2.1 (b). For LIOs and SLIMFs</b> The <i>management plan</i>* includes management actions to achieve the management objective.</p> <p><b>Verifiers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forest management Plan</li> </ul>
<p><b>Indicator 7.2.2 (a).</b> The <i>management plan</i>* addresses the elements listed in Annex E(i), and is implemented</p> <p><b>Verifiers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forest management Plan</li> </ul>



**Indicator 7.2.2 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** The *management plan*\* outlines actions to implement the elements listed in Annex E (ii), and is implemented.

**Verifiers**

- Forest management Plan

**Criterion 7.3.** The management plan\* shall include verifiable targets by which progress towards each of the prescribed management objectives\* can be assessed.

**Indicator 7.3.1** Verifiable targets, and the frequency that they are assessed, are established for *monitoring*\* the progress towards each *management objective*\*.

**Verifiers**

- Forest management Plan

**Guide:**

1. For verifiable targets refer to Annex G(i) for the Non-LIOs, and Annex G(ii) for LIOs

**Criterion 7.4.** The Organization\* shall update and revise periodically the management planning and procedural documentation to incorporate the results of monitoring and evaluation, stakeholder engagement\* or new scientific and technical information, as well as to respond to changing environmental, social and economic circumstances.

**Indicator 7.4.1 (a)** The management plan\* is revised and updated periodically consistent with Annex F to incorporate:

1. Monitoring results, including results of certification audits;
2. Evaluation results;
3. Stakeholder engagement\* results;
4. New scientific and technical information, and
5. Changing environmental, social, or economic circumstances\*.

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of revised Forest management Plan
- Evidence of adaptive management

**Indicator 7.4.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** The management plan\* is revised and updated periodically consistent with the elements in Annex F(ii)

**Verifiers**

- Forest management plan

**Criterion 7.5.** The Organization\* shall make publicly available\* a summary of the management plan\* free of charge. Excluding confidential information, other relevant components of the management plan\* shall be made available to affected stakeholders\* on request, and at cost of reproduction and handling.

**Indicator 7.5.1** A summary of the management plan\* in a format comprehensible to stakeholders including maps and excluding *confidential information\** is made *publicly available\** at no cost.

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of public availability

**Indicator 7.5.2 For Standard Potential Impact Organizations only:** Relevant components of the *management plan\**, excluding *confidential information\**, are available to affected stakeholders\* on request at the actual costs of reproduction and handling.

**Verifiers**

- Procedure for access to the complete Management Plan
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and affected stakeholders

**Guidance:**

1) Low Potential Impact Organizations and SLIMFs are unlikely to be able to provide copy of such summary due to cost implication.

2) Examples of confidential information, includes data & content:

- a) Related to investment decisions;
- b) About intellectual property\* rights;
- c) Client confidential;
- d) By law confidential;
- e) Protecting wildlife species and habitats\*;
- f) About sites that are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to indigenous peoples\* or local communities\* (see Criterion\* 3.5 and Criterion\* 4.7) as requested by these groups.

**Criterion 7.6.** The Organization\* shall, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities, proactively and transparently engage affected stakeholders\* in its management planning and monitoring processes, and shall engage interested stakeholders\* on request.

**Indicator 7.6.1 (a)** *Culturally appropriate\* engagement\** is used to ensure that affected stakeholders\* are proactively and transparently engaged in the following processes:

1. Dispute resolution processes (Criterion\* 1.6, Criterion\* 2.6, Criterion\* 4.6);
2. Definition of Living wages\* (Criterion\* 2.4);
3. Identification of rights (Criterion\* 3.1, Criterion\* 4.1), sites (Criterion\* 3.5, Criterion\* 4.7) and impacts (Criterion\* 4.5);
4. Local communities’\* socio-economic development activities (Criterion\* 4.4); and

5. High Conservation Value\* assessment, management and monitoring (Criterion\* 9.1, Criterion\* 9.2, Criterion\* 9.4).

**Verifiers**

- Documented engagement process / strategy
- Record of engagement activities
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, affected stakeholders and other stakeholders

**Indicator 7.6.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs:** Affected stakeholders\* are appropriately engaged in making decisions where management activities affect them.

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with Organization’s workers, affected stakeholders and other stakeholders

**Indicator 7.6.2 (a)** Culturally appropriate\* engagement\* is used to:

- 1) Determine appropriate representatives and contact points (including where appropriate, local institutions, organizations and authorities);
- 2) Determine mutually agreed communication channels allowing for information to flow in both directions;
- 3) Ensure all actors (women, youth, elderly, minorities) are represented and engaged equitably;
- 4) Ensure all meetings, all points discussed and all agreements reached are recorded;
- 5) Ensure the content of meeting records is approved; and
- 6) Ensure the results of all culturally appropriate\* engagement\* activities are shared with those involved.

**Verifiers**

- Procedure for engagement
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 7.6.2 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Approaches that are mutually agreed upon by both the Organization and stakeholders are used for engaging stakeholders to address issues affecting them

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

Mutual agreement in the Uganda context will normally be achieved through community meetings

**Indicator 7.6.3 (a)** Affected stakeholders\* are provided with an opportunity for *culturally appropriate\*engagement\** in *monitoring\** and planning processes of management activities that affect their interests

**Verifiers**

- Documented engagement process / strategy
- Record of engagement activities

- Interviews with Organization’s workers, affected stakeholders and other stakeholders

**Indicator 7.6.3 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** *Affected stakeholders\** are engaged in planning and monitoring of management activities that affect their interests

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with Organization’s workers and affected stakeholders

**Indicator 7.6.4** On request, *interested stakeholders\** are provided with an opportunity for *engagement\** in *monitoring\** and planning processes of management activities that affect their interests.

**Verifiers**

- Record of engagement activities
- Interviews with Organization’s workers, affected stakeholders and other stakeholders

**PRINCIPLE 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT**

The Organization\* shall\* demonstrate that, progress towards achieving the management objectives\*, the impacts of management activities and the condition of the Management Unit\*, are monitored and evaluated proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities, in order to implement adaptive management\*

**Criterion 8.1.** The Organization\* shall\* monitor the implementation of its Management Plan\*, including its policies and objectives\*, its progress with the activities planned, and the achievement of its verifiable targets.

**Indicator 8.1.1** Procedures are documented and executed for monitoring\* the implementation of the Management Plan\* including its policies and management objectives\* and achievement of verifiable targets\*.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring procedure
- Monitoring plan
- Annual reports
- Monitoring reports

**Criterion 8.2.** The Organization\* shall\* monitor and evaluate the environmental and social impacts of the activities carried out in the Management Unit\*, and changes in its environmental condition.

**Indicator 8.2.1 (a).** The social and environmental impacts of management activities are monitored\* consistent with Annex G (i).

**Verifiers**

- Environmental Monitoring Plan
- Monitoring reports

**Indicator 8.2.1 (b). For LIOs and SLIMFs** The social and environmental impacts of management activities are monitored\* consistent with Annex G (ii).

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring reports
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Comment /Guidance**

Monitoring methods will be in line with FSC Tools for simple monitoring

**Indicator 8.2.2 (a).** Changes in environmental conditions are monitored\* consistent with Annex G (i).

**Verifiers**

- Environmental Monitoring Plan
- Monitoring reports

**Indicator 8.2.2 (b). For LIOs and SLIMFs** Changes in environmental conditions are monitored\* consistent with Annex G (ii).

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring reports
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Comment /Guidance**

Monitoring methods will be in line with FSC Tools for simple monitoring

**Criterion 8.3.** The Organization\* shall\* analyze the results of monitoring and evaluation and feed the outcomes of this analysis back into the planning process.

**Indicator 8.3.1 (a).** Adaptive management\* procedures are implemented so that monitoring\* results feed into periodic updates to the planning process and the resulting management plan\*.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring reports
- Updated forest management plan

**Indicator 8.3.1 (b). For LIOs and SLIMFs** The Organization takes into consideration the results of monitoring and evaluation during the planning process

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of integration of monitoring results in revised plans
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 8.3.2.** If *monitoring\** results show non-conformities with the FSC Standard then *management objectives\**, *verifiable targets\** and / or management activities are revised.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring reports
- Revised Management Plan
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers

**Criterion 8.4.** The Organization\* shall\* make publicly available a summary of the results of monitoring free of charge, excluding confidential information.

**Indicator 8.4.1. (a)** A summary of the *monitoring\** results consistent with Annex G (i), in a format comprehensible to stakeholders including maps and excluding *confidential information\** is made publicly available\* at no cost.

**Verifiers**

- Documented summary of monitoring results
- Evidence of no-cost dissemination
- Interviews with the organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 8.4.1. (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** A summary of the *monitoring\** results consistent with Annex G (ii) is made available on request

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of dissemination of the monitoring results

- Interviews with the organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Criterion 8.5.** The Organization\* shall\* have and implement a tracking and tracing system proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of its management activities, for demonstrating the source and volume in proportion to projected output for each year, of all products from the Management Unit\* that are marketed as FSC certified.

**Indicator 8.5.1.** A system is implemented to track and trace all products that are marketed as FSC certified.

**Verifiers**

- Documented tracking and tracing system
- Evidence of implementation of the system
- Monitoring reports
- Field observations

**Comment / Guidance**

Ref: National Forestry and Tree Planting Regulations, which provide for:

- Licence / permit to fell trees or harvest other produce;
- Forest Produce Declaration Form
- Forest Produce Movement Permit

**Indicator 8.5.2.** Information about all products sold is compiled and documented, including:

- 1) Common and scientific species name;
- 2) Product name or description;
- 3) Volume (or quantity) of product;
- 4) Information to trace the material to the source of origin logging site;
- 5) Logging date;
- 6) If basic processing activities take place in the forest, the date and volume produced; and
- 7) Whether or not the material was sold as FSC certified.

**Verifiers**

- Documentation trail of all products leaving the forest
- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Comment / Guidance**

Ref: National Forestry and Tree Planting Regulations

**Indicator 8.5.3.** Sales invoices or similar documentation are kept for a minimum of five years for all products sold with an FSC claim, which identify at a minimum, the following information:

- 1) Source of product (Forest, Compartment, Village, Subcounty, District)
- 2) Name and address of purchaser;
- 3) The date of sale;
- 4) Common and scientific species name;
- 5) Product description;
- 6) The volume (or quantity) sold;
- 7) Certificate code; and
- 8) The FSC Claim "FSC 100%" identifying products sold as FSC certified.

**Verifiers**

- Sales Invoices or similar documents
- Forest Produce Declaration Form
- Forest Movement Permits

**Guidance**

Ref thee Forestry Regulations for samples of the documents under the relevant Schedules

**PRINCIPLE 9: HIGH CONSERVATION VALUES**

The Organization\* shall\* maintain and/or enhance the High Conservation Values\* in the Management Unit\* through applying the precautionary approach\*

**Criterion 9.1.** The Organization\*, through engagement\* with affected stakeholders\*, interested stakeholders\* and other means and sources, shall assess and record the presence and status of the following High Conservation Values\* in the Management Unit\*, proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of impacts of management activities, and likelihood of the occurrence of the High Conservation Values\*:

HCV 1 – Species diversity. Concentrations of biological diversity\* including endemic species, and rare\*, threatened\* or endangered\* species, that are significant at global, regional or national levels.

HCV 2 – Landscape-level ecosystems\* and mosaics. Intact forest landscapes and large landscape-level ecosystems\* and ecosystem mosaics that are significant at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.

HCV 3 – Ecosystems\* and habitats. Rare, threatened, or endangered ecosystems\*, habitats\* or refugia\*.

HCV 4 – Critical ecosystem services\*. Basic ecosystem services\* in critical\* situations, including protection\* of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

HCV 5 – Community needs. Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of local



communities\* or indigenous peoples\* (for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water, etc.), identified through engagement with these communities or indigenous peoples.

HCV 6 – Cultural values. Sites, resources, habitats and landscapes\* of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of critical\* cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of local communities\* or indigenous peoples\*, identified through engagement with these local communities\* or indigenous peoples\*.

**Indicator 9.1.1** An assessment is completed using Best Available Information\* that records the location and status of High Conservation Value\* Categories 1-6, as defined in Criterion\* 9.1; the High Conservation Value Areas\* they rely upon (Annex I), and their condition.

**Verifiers**

- Maps
- Expert reviewed Assessment Report or reports for HCV
- Interviews with Organization\*'s worker\*s and other relevant stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guide:**

Refer to **Annex I** (High Conservation Value Framework for Uganda) and the possible sources of “Best Available Information” outlined in **Annex J**

**Indicator 9.1.2** The assessment uses results from culturally appropriate\* engagement\* (Annex I) with affected\* and interested stakeholders\* with an interest in the conservation\* of the High Conservation Values\*

**Verifiers**

- Stakeholder engagement strategy
- Record of stakeholder engagement
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers

**Comment:**

“Culturally appropriate engagement” is variable and will be specific to the area where the Organization operates

**Criterion 9.2.** The Organization\* shall\* develop effective strategies that maintain and/or enhance the identified High Conservation Values\*, through engagement\* with affected stakeholders\*, interested stakeholders\* and experts.

**Indicator 9.2.1** Threats to High Conservation Values\* are identified using Best Available Information

(Annex I).

**Verifiers**

- Threat Assessment Reports
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 9.2.2** Management strategies and actions are developed to maintain and/or enhance the identified High Conservation Values\* and to maintain associated High Conservation Value\* Areas\*(Annex I) prior to implementing potentially harmful management activities.

**Verifiers**

- Documented strategies and procedures
- Forest management Plan

**Indicator 9.2.3** *Affected\** and *interested stakeholders\** and experts are engaged in the development of management strategies and actions to maintain and/or enhance the identified *High Conservation Values\**.

**Verifiers**

- Stakeholder engagement process
- Documented management strategies
- Interviews with organization’s works and other stakeholders

**Comment:**

Among the “experts” are included the relevant District local government personnel, NGOs, consultants.

**Indicator 9.2.4** The strategies developed are effective to maintain and/or enhance the High Conservation Values\* and mitigate and/or control the threats identified in 9.1.1.

**Verifiers**

- Documented management strategies
- Monitoring reports
- Interviews with organization’s works and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Criterion 9.3.** The Organization\* shall\* implement strategies and actions that maintain and/or enhance the identified High Conservation Values\*. These strategies and actions shall\* implement the precautionary approach\* and be proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management

activities.

**Indicator 9.3.1** The *High Conservation Values\** and the *High Conservation Value Areas\** on which they depend are maintained and/or enhanced, including by implementing the strategies developed (Annex I).

**Verifiers**

- Annual Work Plans and Budgets
- Monitoring and evaluation reports
- Routine reports
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guidance:**

Ref Annex I.

**Indicator 9.3.2** The strategies and actions prevent damage and avoid risks to *High Conservation Values\**.

**Verifiers**

- Study Reports
- Environment Management Plan
- Forest Management Plan
- Documented measures
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 9.3.3** Activities that harm *High Conservation Values\** cease immediately and actions are taken to *restore\** and protect the *High Conservation Values\**.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring and evaluation reports
- Restoration Action Plans (For Large Scale)
- Routine Reports
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Criterion 9.4.** The Organization\* shall\* demonstrate that periodic monitoring is carried out to assess changes in the status of High Conservation Values\*, and shall\* adapt its management strategies to ensure their effective protection\*. The monitoring shall be proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities, and shall include engagement\* with affected stakeholders\*, interested

stakeholders\* and experts.

**Indicator 9.4.1 (a)** A program of periodic *monitoring\** (Annex G) assesses:

1. Implementation of strategies;
2. The status of *High Conservation Values\** including High Conservation areas on which they depend; and
3. The effectiveness of the management strategies and actions for the protection\* of the *High Conservation Values\** to fully maintain and/or enhance the High Conservation Values\*.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring program
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports

**Indicator 9.4.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Actions to monitor HCVs cover at a minimum:

1. The status of High Conservation Values\* including High Conservation areas on which they depend; and
2. The effectiveness of the management actions for the protection\* of the High Conservation Values\* to fully maintain and/or enhance the High Conservation Values.

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 9.4.2 (a)** The monitoring program includes engagement\* with *affected\** and *interested stakeholders\** and experts.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring Program
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and stakeholders

**Indicator 9.4.2 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Monitoring is done through engagement with affected and interested stakeholders and local experts on request

**Verifiers**

- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 9.4.3** The *monitoring\** program has sufficient scope, detail and frequency to detect changes in High Conservation Values\*, relative to the initial assessment and status identified for each *High Conservation Value\**.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring Program

**Indicator 9.4.4** Management strategies and actions are adapted when monitoring or other new information shows that these strategies and actions are insufficient to ensure the maintenance and/or enhancement of High Conservation Values\*.

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring and evaluation reports
- Evidence of adaptation of results

**PRINCIPLE 10: IMPLEMENTATION OF MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES**

Management activities conducted by or for The Organization\* for the Management Unit\* shall\* be selected and implemented consistent with The Organization\*'s economic, environmental and social policies and objectives\* and in compliance with the Principles and Criteria collectively.

**Criterion 10.1.** After harvest or in accordance with the management plan\*, The Organization\* shall\*, by natural or artificial regeneration methods, regenerate vegetation cover in a timely fashion to pre-harvesting or more natural conditions\*.

**Indicator 10.1.1** Harvested sites are regenerated in a timely manner that:

1. Protects affected environmental values\*, and
2. Is suitable to recover overall pre-harvest or natural forest\* composition and structure

**Verifiers**

- Annual Work Plan and Budgets
- Routine Reports
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field Observations
- Interviews with Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 10.1.2** Regeneration activities\* are implemented in a manner that:

- 1) For harvest of existing plantations\*, regenerate to the vegetation cover that existed prior to the harvest or to more natural conditions\* using ecologically well-adapted species;
- 2) For harvest of natural forests\*, regenerate to pre-harvest\* or to more natural conditions\*; or
- 3) For harvest of degraded natural forests\*, regenerate to more natural conditions\*.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Evidence for species-site matching

- Routine Reports
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field Observations
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Criterion 10.2.** The Organization\* shall\* use species for regeneration that are ecologically well adapted to the site and to the management objectives\*. The Organization\* shall\* use native species\* and local genotypes\* for regeneration, unless there is clear and convincing justification for using others.

**Indicator 10.2.1** Species\* chosen for regeneration are ecologically well adapted to the site, are native species\* and are of local provenance, unless clear and convincing justification is provided for using non-local genotypes\* or non-native species\*.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Evidence for species-site matching
- Field Observations
- Interviews with Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance**

The Uganda Forestry Policy (2001) encourages commercial tree growing to address the growing wood shortage in the country. The selection of the species is based on species trials done in the 1950s-60s which established growth performance and therefore returns on investment. Currently, species choice depends on (1) growth rates, (2) species-site matching - suitability of soils and climate, (3) uses and markets. Eucalyptus and pine have been preferred for their fast-growing, high-yielding performance. The Sawlog Production Grant Scheme developed a list of recommended species for commercial planting.

**Indicator 10.2.2** Species chosen for regeneration are consistent with the regeneration objectives\* and with the management objectives\*.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field Observations

**Criterion 10.3.** The Organization\* shall\* only use alien species\* when knowledge and/or experience have shown that any invasive impacts can be controlled and effective mitigation measures are in place.

**Indicator 10.3.1** Alien species\* are used only when direct experience and / or the results of scientific

research demonstrate that invasive impacts can be controlled.

**Verifiers**

- Specialized study Reports
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field Observations

**Comment / Guidance**

The selection of the species like Eucalyptus, pine and Terminalia is based on species trials done in the 1950s-60s which established growth performance and therefore site suitability and returns on investment.

**Indicator 10.3.2** Alien species\* are used only when effective mitigation measures are in place to control their spread outside the area in which they are established.

**Verifiers**

- Mitigation measures / strategies
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field Observations

**Indicator 10.3.3** The spread of invasive species introduced by *The Organization\** is controlled inside the Forest management Unit and the surrounding areas

**Verifiers**

- Strategy for controlling Invasive species
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field Observations

**Indicator 10.3.4** Management activities are implemented, preferably in cooperation with separate regulatory bodies where these exist, with an aim to control the invasive impacts of alien species\* that were not introduced by The Organization\*.

**Verifiers**

- Strategy for controlling Invasive species
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field Observations

**Guidance:**

The regulatory bodies include:

- Directorate of Crop Protection, Ministry of Agriculture, Animal Industry and Fisheries;

- National Environment Authority
- Forestry Sector Support Department

**Criterion 10.4.** The Organization\* shall\* not use genetically modified organisms\* in the Management Unit\*.

**Indicator 10.4.1** Genetically Modified Organisms\*are not used

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Field Observations
- Interviews with stakeholders

**Criterion 10.5.** The Organization\* shall\* use silvicultural practices that are ecologically appropriate for the vegetation, species, sites and management objectives\*.

**Indicator 10.5.1** Silvicultural practices are implemented that are ecologically appropriate for the vegetation, species, sites and management objectives\*.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Documented silvicultural systems
- Evidence of compliance with National Guidelines for management of natural forests an National Guidelines for Tree Growing
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field Observations

**Criterion 10.6.** The Organization\* shall\* minimize or avoid the use of fertilizers. When fertilizers are used, The Organization\* shall demonstrate that use is equally or more ecologically and economically beneficial than use of silvicultural systems that do not require fertilizers, and prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to environmental values\*, including soils.

**Indicator 10.6.1** The use of fertilizers\* is minimized or avoided.

**Verifiers**

- Plans for use of fertilizers
- Forest Management Plan



- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field Observations

**Indicator 10.6.2** When fertilizers\* are used, their ecological and economic benefits are equal to or higher than those of silvicultural systems that do not require fertilizers\*.

**Verifiers**

- Evidence of ecological and economic benefits
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports

**Indicator 10.6.3** When fertilizers\* are used, their types, rates, frequencies and site of application are documented

**Verifiers**

- Plans for use of fertilizers
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports

**Guidance:**

The application of fertilizers in an area should be based on existing available research information, or information derived from on-site trials.

**Indicator 10.6.4** When fertilizers are used, environmental values are protected, including through implementation of measures to prevent damage

**Verifiers**

- Measures for protection of environmental values
- Monitoring reports
- Maps (for Large Scale)

**Guidance:**

The Occupational Health & Safety Act (2006) requires monitoring of chemicals/fertilizers release in the environment.

**Indicator 10.6.35** Damage to environmental values\* resulting from fertilizer use is mitigated or repaired

**Verifiers**

- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Mitigation Action Plan
- Field observation

**Criterion 10.7.** The Organization\* shall\* use integrated pest management and silviculture\* systems which avoid, or aim at eliminating, the use of chemical pesticides\*. The Organization\* shall\* not use any chemical pesticides\* prohibited by FSC policy. When pesticides\* are used, The Organization\* shall\* prevent, mitigate, and / or repair damage to environmental values\* and human health.

**Indicator 10.7.1 (a)** Integrated pest management, including selection of silviculture\* systems, is used to avoid, or aim to eliminate the frequency, extent, and amount of chemical pesticide\* applications, and result in non-use or overall reductions in applications.”

**Verifiers**

- Integrated Pest Management Strategy\*\*
- Monitoring and Evaluation Reports
- Field observation

**Guide:**

‘FSC Guide to integrated pest, disease and weed management in FSC certified forests and plantations’ (2009) and associated policies, guidelines, advice notes

**Indicator 10.7.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Actions are included in the Management Plan that show commitment to reduction and eventual elimination of chemical usage

**Verifiers**

- Management Plan
- Records of chemical use
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.7.2** Chemical pesticides\* prohibited by FSC’s Pesticide Policy are not used or stored in the Management Unit unless FSC has granted derogation

**Verifiers**

- No evidence of use of prohibited chemical pesticides
- Derogation documents in case they are being used

**Guidance:**

Ref. to FSC pesticide policy and list of prohibited pesticides (FSC-STD-30-01a)

**Indicator 10.7.3** Records of pesticide\* usage are maintained, including trade name, active ingredient, quantity of active ingredient used, period of use, location and area of use, and reason for use

**Verifiers**

- Records

**Indicator 10.7.4** The use of pesticides\* complies with the ILO document “Safety in the use of chemicals at work” regarding requirements for the transport, storage, handling, application and emergency procedures for clean-up following accidental spillages.

**Verifiers**

- Documented procedures for use of pesticides in accordance with ILO Guides on:
- Safety and Health in the Use of Agrochemicals: A Guide
- Safety in the Use of Chemicals at Work

**Guidance:**

Refer to the International Labour Organisation code of practice on health and safety in forestry work ([www.ilo.org](http://www.ilo.org))

**Indicator 10.7.5** If pesticides\* are used, application methods minimize quantities used, while achieving effective results, and provide effective protection\* to surrounding landscapes\*.

**Verifiers**

- Documented procedures for use of pesticides
- Monitoring reports
- Interviews with stakeholders

**Indicator 10.7.6** Damage to environmental values\* and human health from pesticide\* use is prevented and mitigated or repaired where damage occurs

**Verifiers**

- Strategies for preventing damage to environmental values and human health
- Monitoring reports
- Interviews with stakeholders
- Field observations

**Guidance:**

The Occupational Health & Safety Act (2006) requires monitoring of chemicals/fertilizers release in the environment

**Indicator 10.7.7** When pesticides\* are used:

- 1) The selected pesticide\*, application method, timing and pattern of use offers the least risk to humans and non-target species; and
- 2) Objective evidence demonstrates that the pesticide\* is the only effective, practical and cost effective way to control the pest.

**Verifiers**

- Protocols for pesticide application
- Monitoring reports
- Interviews with stakeholders

**Criterion 10.8.** The Organization\* shall\* minimize, monitor and strictly control the use of biological control agents\* in accordance with internationally accepted scientific protocols\*. When biological control agents\* are used, The Organization\* shall\* prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to environmental values\*.

**Indicator 10.8.1** The use of biological control agents\* is minimized, monitored\* and controlled.

**Verifiers**

- Protocol used

**Guidance:**

Relevant institutions for biological control include the National Forestry Resources Research Institute (NaFORRI), Ministry of Agriculture (Crop Protection Department) and NEMA

**Indicator 10.8.2** Use of biological control agents\* complies with internationally accepted scientific protocols\*.

**Verifiers**

- Certificate to use biological control agents
- Protocols used
- Interviews with the Organization’s workers and other stakeholders

**Guidance:**

Usage of biological agent requires a certificate from the Directorate of Crop Protection/Ministry of Agriculture, Animals, Industry and Fisheries.

**Indicator 10.8.3** The use of biological control agents\* is recorded including type, quantity, period, location and reason for use.

**Verifiers**

- Records

**Indicator 10.8.4** Damage to *environmental values\** caused by the use of *biological control agents\** is prevented and *mitigated\** or *repaired\** where damage occurs.

**Verifiers**

- Protocols used
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observation

**Criterion 10.9.** The Organization\* shall\* assess risks\* and implement activities that reduce potential negative impacts from natural hazards proportionate to scale, intensity, and risk\*.

**Indicator 10.9.1 (a)** Potential negative impacts of natural *hazards\** on *infrastructure\**, *forest\** resources, and communities in the *Management Unit\** are assessed.

**Verifiers**

- Risk Assessment Reports

**Guidance:**

The potential natural hazards in Uganda include floods, drought, windstorms, hailstorms, earthquakes, landslides, lightning, and volcanic activities.

**Indicator 10.9.1 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Potential negative impacts of natural *hazards\** on *infrastructure\**, *forest\** resources, and communities in the *Management Unit\** are known, determined on the basis of Best Available Information

**Verifiers**

- Checklist of potential impacts
- Interview with the Organization's works and other stakeholders
- Filed observations

**Guidance:**

The potential natural hazards in Uganda include floods, drought, windstorms, hailstorms, earthquakes, landslides, lightning, and volcanic activities.

**Indicator 10.9.2** Management activities mitigate these impacts.

**Verifiers**

- Management Plans
- Annual work plans
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Guide:**

Measures may include:

- creation and maintenance of fire breaks and reservoir ponds to prevent fire damage;
- apply silvicultural regimes that prevent storm damage and wind-throw;
- controlled burning for pest control;
- preserving natural patterns of drainage and
- wetlands to prevent flood damage;

**Indicator 10.9.3 (a)** The *risk\** for management activities to increase the frequency, distribution, or severity of *natural hazards\** is identified for those *hazards\** that may be influenced by management.

**Verifiers**

- Risk Assessment Reports
- Forest management Plan
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Indicator 10.9.3 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** The management activities aim to minimize the risks and impacts of naturally occurring hazards

**Verifiers**

- Management Plan
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.9.4 (a)** Management activities are modified and/or measures are developed and implemented that reduce the identified *risks*\*.

**Verifiers**

- Risk management strategy
- Forest management plans
- Monitoring reports

**Guidance**

May implement the following measures:

- In general: stakeholder engagement; public education; equipment; training; monitoring; risk mitigation; collaborate with other agencies, etc.
- Fire damage: establish fire detection systems; fire management plans, including preparation and training of fire crews; provision and regular maintenance of suitable equipment.
- Storm damage and wind-throw: develop wind maps.
- Pests, plant diseases, pathogens, invasive weeds: clearance of fallen wood, standing dead wood and coarse woody debris, in line with best scientific and local knowledge (keeping a balance to keep the wood needed for healthy decomposition cycles and populations of predators and parasites to exert natural control over pests); decreasing stress on species through species-site matching in accordance with Criterion 10.2, monitoring (Principle 8), together with integrated pest management (Criterion 10.7), cover crops, species diversification, silvicultural practices which prevent weed growth and maintain growth of crop species at optimum levels and reduced harvest intensity.
- Flood damage: installing effective drainage structures.

**Indicator 10.9.4 (b) For LIOs and SLIMFs** Management activities are implemented that reduce the identified *risks*\*.

**Verifiers**

- Risk management actions
- Forest management plans
- Interviews with the Organization's workers and other stakeholders

**Criterion 10.10.** The Organization\* shall\* manage infrastructural development, transport activities and silviculture\* so that water resources and soils are protected, and disturbance of and damage to rare and threatened species\*, habitats\*, ecosystems\* and landscape values\* are prevented, mitigated and/or repaired.

**Indicator 10.10.1 (a)** Development, maintenance and use of *infrastructure\**, as well as transport activities, are managed to protect *environmental values\** identified in *Criterion\** 6.1.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Annual Work Plans
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.10.1 (b)** Road networks (including watercourse crossings) are mapped, and their density within the FMU known

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Annual Work Plans
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.10.1 (c)** Road network densities and watercourse crossings are reduced

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Annual Work Plans
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.10.1 (d)** Infrastructural development, including transport activities are maintained and managed to protect identified environmental values (Principle 6).

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Annual Work Plans
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.10.2** *Silviculture\** activities are managed to ensure protection of the *environmental values\** identified in *Criterion\** 6.1.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Annual Work plans
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.10.3** Disturbance or damages to the environmental values as identified under Criterion 6.1 are prevented, *mitigated\** and *repaired\** in a *timely manner\**, and management activities modified to prevent further damage.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Annual Work plans
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Criterion 10.11.** The Organization\* shall\* manage activities associated with harvesting and extraction of timber and non-timber forest products\* so that environmental values\* are conserved, merchantable waste is reduced, and damage to other products and services is avoided.

**Indicator 10.11.1** Harvesting and extraction practices for timber and non-timber forest products\* are implemented in a manner that conserves environmental values\* as identified in Criterion\* 6.1.

**Verifiers**

- Forest Management Plan
- Harvesting Plans
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.11.2** Harvesting practices optimize the use of forest\* products and merchantable materials.

**Verifiers**

- Documented harvesting procedures
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.11.3** Sufficient amounts of dead and decaying biomass and forest\* structure are retained to conserve environmental values\*.

**Verifiers**

- Documented harvesting procedures



- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Indicator 10.11.4** Harvesting practices avoid damage to standing residual trees, residual woody debris on the ground and other environmental values\*.

**Verifiers**

- Documented harvesting procedures
- Forest Management Plan
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

**Criterion 10.12.** The Organization\* shall\* dispose of waste materials in an environmentally appropriate manner.

**Indicator 10.12.1** Collection, clean up, transportation and disposal of all waste materials\* is done in an environmentally appropriate way that conserves environmental values\* as identified in Criterion\* 6.1

**Verifiers**

- Strategy for waste management
- Interviews of Organizational workers and other stakeholders
- Monitoring and evaluation Reports
- Field observations

9. ANNEXES

ANNEX A: APPLICABLE LAWS\* AND REGULATIONS

I. National Laws

Category of legislation	Coverage	Applicable National Laws
<b>1. Legal rights to harvest</b>		
<b>1.1 Land tenure* and management rights</b>	Legislation covering land tenure* rights, including customary rights as well as management rights that includes the use of legal* methods to obtain tenure* rights and management rights. It also covers legal* business registration and tax registration, including relevant legal* required licenses.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Constitution of the Republic of Uganda (1995), amended 2005</li> <li>• Land Act (1998),</li> <li>• Land (Amendment) Act (2010),</li> <li>• National Environment Act (1995),</li> <li>• Local Government Act (1997),</li> <li>• Wildlife Act (1995),</li> <li>• Land Acquisition Act (1965),</li> <li>• Mining Act (2003),</li> <li>• Petroleum (Exploration, Development and Production) Act (2013),</li> <li>• The Traditional Rulers (Restitution of Assets and Properties) Act (1993),</li> <li>• Roads Act (1949)</li> <li>• The Access to Roads Act (1969)</li> <li>• The Companies Act (1961)</li> <li>• The Business Names Registration Act, Cap 109</li> <li>• The Business Names Registration (Amendment) Rules, 2005 SI 53/2005</li> <li>• The Business Names Registration (Appointment of Registrar) Order SI 109-2</li> <li>• The Finance Act bill 2013-viz the Taxes and Duties (Provisional ) Order No. 27 of 2013</li> <li>• The Business Names Registration (Appointment of Registrar) Order SI 109-2</li> <li>• The Partnerships Act, 2010</li> </ul>
<b>1.2 Concession licenses</b>	Legislation regulating procedures for the issuing of forest* concession licenses, including use of legal*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003),</li> <li>• Public Procurement and Disposal</li> </ul>

Category of legislation	Coverage	Applicable National Laws
	<p>methods to obtain concession license. Especially bribery, corruption and nepotism are well-known issues in connection with concession licenses.</p>	<p>of Public Assets Act (2003)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Environment Act (1995),</li> <li>• Wildlife Act (1995),</li> <li>• Land Act (1998),</li> <li>• Inspectorate of Government Act (2002)</li> <li>• Leadership Code Act (2002)</li> <li>• Whistle blowers Act (2010),</li> <li>• The Trade (Licensing) Act (1969),</li> <li>• The Income Tax Act (1997)</li> <li>• Value added Tax Act (1996)</li> </ul>
<p><b>1.3 Management and harvesting planning</b></p>	<p>Any national or sub-national legal* requirements for Management Planning, including conducting forest* inventories, having a forest* Management Plan* and related planning and monitoring, impact assessments, consultation with other entities, as well as approval of these by legally competent* authorities.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003),</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations (2014)</li> <li>• National Environment Act (1995),</li> <li>• Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations (1998)</li> <li>• Uganda Wildlife Act (1995)</li> <li>• Local Governments Act (1997)</li> </ul>
<p><b>1.4 Harvesting permits</b></p>	<p>National and sub-national laws and regulations regulating the issuing of harvesting permits, licenses or other legal* document required for specific harvesting operations. It includes the use of legal* methods to obtain the permit. Corruption is a well-known issue in connection with the issuing of harvesting permits.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003),</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations (2014)</li> <li>• Public Procurement and Disposal of Public Assets Act (2003)</li> <li>• Anti-corruption Act (2009),</li> <li>• The Trade (Licensing) Act (1969),</li> <li>• The Income Tax Act (1997)</li> <li>• Value added Tax Act (1996)</li> </ul>
<p><b>2. Taxes and fees</b></p>		
<p><b>2.1 Payment of royalties and harvesting fees</b></p>	<p>Legislation covering payment of all legally required forest* harvesting specific fees such as royalties, stumpage fees and other volume based fees. It also includes payments of the fees based on correct classification of quantities, qualities and species. Incorrect classification of forest* products is a well-known issue often combined with bribery of officials in charge of controlling the classification.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003) ,</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations (2014),</li> <li>• Anti-corruption Act (2009)</li> <li>• The Trade (Licensing) Act (1969),</li> <li>• The Income Tax Act (1997)</li> <li>• Value added Tax Act (1996)</li> </ul>

Category of legislation	Coverage	Applicable National Laws
<b>2.2 Value added taxes and other sales taxes</b>	Legislation covering different types of sales taxes which apply to the material being sold, including selling material as growing forest* (standing stock sales).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry and Tree Planting Act (2003),</li> <li>• National Forestry and Tree Planting Regulations (2014)</li> <li>• Local Governments (Financial and Accounting) Regulations (2007)</li> <li>• The Local Governments Finance Commission Act (2003)</li> <li>• The Trade (Licensing) Act (1969),</li> <li>• The Income Tax Act (1997),</li> <li>• The Public Finance and Accountability Act (2003)</li> <li>• Value added Tax Act (1996)</li> </ul>
<b>2.3 Income and profit taxes</b>	Legislation covering income and profit taxes related to the profit derived from sale of forest* products and harvesting activities. This category is also related to income from the sale of timber and does not include other taxes generally applicable for companies or related to salary payments.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Income Tax Act (1997)</li> <li>• Value added Tax Act (1996)</li> </ul>
<b>3. Timber harvesting activities</b>		
<b>3.1 Timber harvesting regulations</b>	Any legal* requirements for harvesting techniques and technology including selective cutting, shelter wood regenerations, clear felling, transport of timber from felling site and seasonal limitations etc. Typically this includes regulations on the size of felling areas, minimum age and/or diameter for felling activities and elements that shall* be preserved during felling etc. Establishment of skidding or hauling trails, road construction, drainage systems and bridges etc. shall* also be considered as well as planning and monitoring of harvesting activities. Any legally binding codes for harvesting practices shall* be considered.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations (2014),</li> <li>• National Environment Act (1995)</li> <li>• The Roads Act (1949)</li> <li>• The Uganda National Roads Authority Act (2006)</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations</li> </ul>

Category of legislation	Coverage	Applicable National Laws
<b>3.2 Protected sites and species</b>	International, national, and sub national treaties, laws, and regulations related to protected areas allowable forest* uses and activities, and/or, rare, threatened, or endangered species, including their habitats* and potential habitats*.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003),</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations (2014),</li> <li>• National Environment Act (1995),</li> <li>• Wildlife Act (1995),</li> <li>• The Plant Protection Act (1937),</li> <li>• Land Act (1998),</li> <li>• Agricultural Seeds and Plant Act (1994)</li> <li>• Seed and Plant Act (2006)</li> <li>• Water Act (1997),</li> <li>• National Environment wetlands, riverbanks and lakeshores regulations</li> </ul>
<b>3.3 Environmental requirements</b>	National and sub national laws and regulations related to the identification and/or protection* of environmental values* including but not limited to those relating to or affected by harvesting, acceptable level for soil damage, establishment of buffer zones (e.g. along water courses, open areas, breeding sites), maintenance of retention trees on felling site, seasonal limitation of harvesting time, environmental requirements for forest* machineries, use of pesticides* and other chemicals, biodiversity conservation*, air quality, protection* and restoration* of water quality, operation of recreational equipment, development of non-forestry infrastructure, mineral exploration and extraction, etc.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003),</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations (2014),</li> <li>• National Environment Act (1995),</li> <li>• Wildlife Act (1995),</li> <li>• Plant protection Act,</li> <li>• Land Act (1998),</li> <li>• Water Act (1997),</li> <li>• National Environment wetlands, riverbanks and lakeshores regulations,</li> <li>• Mining Act (2003),</li> <li>• Petroleum (Exploration,, Development and Production) Act (2013),</li> <li>• The Control of Agricultural Chemicals Act (1989)</li> </ul>

Category of legislation	Coverage	Applicable National Laws
<b>3.4 Health and safety</b>	Legally required personal protection* equipment for persons involved in harvesting activities, use of safe felling and transport practice, establishment of protection* zones around harvesting sites, and safety requirements to machinery used. Legally required safety requirements in relation to chemical usage. The health and safety requirements that shall* be considered relate to operations in the forest* (not office work, or other activities less related to actual forest* operations).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry and Tree Planting Regulations (2014)</li> <li>• Employment Act (2006)</li> <li>• The Occupational Safety and Healthy safety Act (2006),</li> <li>• Labour Disputes (Arbitration &amp; Settlement) Act (2006)</li> <li>• Workers Compensation Act (2000)</li> <li>• Workers Compensation Regulations. Statutory Instrument 225-1 (2000)</li> <li>• National Environment Act (1995)</li> </ul>
<b>3.5 Legal employment</b>	Legal requirements for employment of personnel involved in harvesting activities including requirement for contracts and working permits, requirements for obligatory insurances, requirements for competence certificates and other training requirements, and payment of social and income taxes withhold by employer. Furthermore, the points cover observance of minimum working age and minimum age for personal involved in hazardous work, legislation against forced and compulsory labor, and discrimination and freedom of association.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Employment Act (2006),</li> <li>• The Employment Regulations (2011)</li> <li>• Labour Union Act (2006),</li> <li>• Labour Disputes (Arbitration &amp; Settlement) Act (2006),</li> <li>• Workers Compensation Act (2000),</li> <li>• Childrens Act (1997),</li> <li>• The Occupational Safety and Healthy safety Act (2006),</li> <li>• The Income Tax Act (1997)</li> <li>• The Equal Opportunities Commission Act (2007)</li> </ul>
<b>4. Third parties' rights</b>		
<b>4.1 Customary rights</b>	Legislation covering customary rights relevant to forest* harvesting activities including requirements covering sharing of benefits and indigenous rights	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Constitution of the Republic of Uganda (1995) as amended 2005</li> <li>• The Land Act (1998) as amended 2010</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003),</li> <li>• Traditional Rulers (Restitution) Act (1993)</li> <li>• Local Governments Act (1997)</li> </ul>

Category of legislation	Coverage	Applicable National Laws
<b>4.2 Free prior and informed consent</b>	Legislation covering “free prior and informed consent” in connection with transfer of forest* management rights and customary rights to the organization in charge of the harvesting operation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Constitution of the Republic of Uganda (1995) as amended 2005</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003)</li> <li>• National Environment Act (1995)</li> <li>• Local governments Act (1997)</li> </ul>
<b>4.3 Indigenous peoples rights</b>	Legislation that regulates the rights of indigenous people* as far as it’s related to forestry activities. Possible aspects to consider are land tenure*, right to use certain forest* related resources or practice traditional activities, which may involve forest* lands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Constitution of the Republic of Uganda (1995) as amended 2005</li> <li>• Wildlife Act (1995),</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003)</li> </ul>
<b>5. Trade and transport</b>		
<b>NOTE: This section covers requirements for forest* management operations as well as processing and trade</b>		
<b>5.1 Classification of species, quantities, qualities</b>	Legislation regulating how harvested material is classified in terms of species, volumes and qualities in connection with trade and transport. Incorrect classification of harvested material is a well-known method to reduce/avoid payment of legality prescribed taxes and fees.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003)</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations (2014)</li> <li>• Seed &amp; Plant Act (2006),</li> <li>• Public Procurement and Disposal Act, 2003</li> </ul>
<b>5.2 Trade and transport</b>	All required trading permits shall* exist as well as legally required transport document which accompany transport of wood from forest* operation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003)</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations (2014)</li> <li>• Trade (Licensing) Act (1969),</li> <li>• Value added Tax Act (1996), as amended (2012)</li> <li>• Companies Act (1961)</li> </ul>

Category of legislation	Coverage	Applicable National Laws
<b>5.3 Offshore trading and transfer pricing</b>	Legislation regulating offshore trading. Offshore trading with related companies placed in tax havens combined with artificial transfer prices is a well-known way to avoid payment of legally prescribed taxes and fees to the country of harvest and considered as an important generator of funds that can be used for payment of bribery and black money to the forest* operation and personal involved in the harvesting operation. Many countries have established legislation covering transfer pricing and offshore trading. It should* be noted that only transfer pricing and offshore trading as far as it is legally prohibited in the country, can be included here.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trade (Licensing) Act (1969),</li> <li>• Anti- Corruption Act (2009),</li> <li>• Anti- money laundering Act (2013),</li> <li>• Public Finance and Accountability Act (2003)</li> <li>•</li> </ul>
<b>5.4 Custom regulations</b>	Custom legislation covering areas such as export/import licenses, product classification (codes, quantities, qualities and species).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uganda Revenue Authority Act (1991),</li> <li>• Customs Tariff Act (1970)</li> <li>• Trade (Licensing) Act (1969),</li> <li>• Value added Tax Act (1996),</li> <li>• Companies Act</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Act (2003)</li> <li>• National Forestry &amp; Tree Planting Regulations (2014)</li> </ul>
<b>5.5 CITES</b>	CITES Certificates (the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora, also known as the Washington Convention).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No specific law, but Uganda has the obligation to enforce the CITES provisions. Uganda ratified the Convention on 18<sup>th</sup> July 1991)</li> <li>• The Ministry of Tourism, Wildlife and Antiquities is spearheading the process to revise the main wildlife law in Uganda (The Uganda Wildlife Act (Cap 200 of 2000) with a view to domesticating and mainstreaming CITES into the national legislation</li> </ul>
<b>6 Due diligence / due care</b>		



Category of legislation	Coverage	Applicable National Laws
6.1 Due diligence / duecare procedures	Legislation requiring due diligence/due care procedures, including e.g. due diligence/due care systems, declaration obligations, and/or the keeping of trade related documents etc.	•

## II. LIST OF NATIONALLY-RATIFIED\* INTERNATIONAL TREATIES, CONVENTIONS AND AGREEMENTS

	TREATY/CONVENTION/AGREEMENT
1.	The Ramsar Convention on Wetlands, 1971
2.	The Convention for the Protection of World Cultural and Natural Heritage, 1972;
3.	The Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species, 1973;
4.	The Bonn Convention on Migratory Species, 1979
5.	Agenda 21, 1992;
6.	The Convention on Biological Diversity, 1992
7.	The United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change, 1992
8.	The Convention to Combat Desertification, 1994
9.	The Africa Forest Law Enforcement and Governance
10.	The Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa (COMESA)
11.	Protocol on the Sustainable Development of Lake Victoria Basin;
12.	The East African Community Protocol on Environment and Natural Resources Management
13.	The African Great Lakes Pact
14.	Kagera Basin Agreement, 1997

## III. THE EIGHT CORE INTERNATIONAL LABOUR ORGANIZATION CONVENTIONS

Uganda has ratified to the following eight Core International Labour Organization Conventions as defined in the ILO Declaration on Fundamental Principles and Rights at Work (1998):

No.	Convention	Year Ratified	Related National legislation
29	Forced Labour Convention, 1930	4 <sup>th</sup> June 1963	Employment Act, 2006 (Sec 5)
87	Freedom of Association and Protection of the Right to Organize Convention, 1948	2 <sup>nd</sup> June 2005	Labour Unions Act, 2006
98	Right to Organize and Collective Bargaining Convention, 1949	4 <sup>th</sup> June 1963	Labour Unions Act, 2006
100	Equal Remuneration Convention, 1951	2 <sup>nd</sup> June 2005	The Equal Opportunities Commission Act, 2007;

			Employment Act, 2006 (Sec 6)
105	Abolition of Forced Labour Convention, 1957	4 <sup>th</sup> June 1963	Employment Act, 2006 (Sec 5)
111	Discrimination (Employment and Occupation) Convention, 1958	4 <sup>th</sup> June 1963	Employment Act, 2006 (Sec 6)
138	Minimum Age Convention, 1973. (Minimum age specified is 14 years)	25 <sup>th</sup> March 2003	Employment Act, 2006 (Sec 32)
182	Worst Forms of Child Labour Convention, 1999	21 <sup>st</sup> June 2001	

#### IV. IUCN RED LIST OF THREATENED SPECIES

Uganda CITES Species website:

<http://www.wipo.int/edocs/lexdocs/laws/en/ug/ug021en.pdf>

The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species provides information on [plants](#) and animals that have evaluated against a number of criteria designed to determine their relative [risk of extinction](#). [Species](#) for which there is sufficient data are ranked on a scale:

- Extinct (EX)
- Extinct in the Wild (EW)
- Critically Endangered (CR)
- Endangered (EN)
- Vulnerable (VU)
- Near Threatened (NT)
- Least Concern (LC)

#### Threatened Species

Species within the categories of Critically Endangered (CR), Endangered (EN), and Vulnerable (VU) are termed *threatened*.

As of July 10, 2009, the IUCN database included 196 threatened species in [Uganda](#) which are listed here.

#### ***Critically endangered plants***

*Afrothismia winkleri*

*Diospyros katendei*

*Encephalartos equatorialis*

#### ***Endangered plants***

*Brazzeia longipedicellata*

*Dialium excelsum*

*Dracaena ombet*

*Lovoa swynnertonii*

#### ***Vulnerable plants***

1. *Afzelia africana*

2. *Afzelia bipindensis*
3. *Albizia ferruginea*
4. *Antrocaryon micraster*
5. *Beilschmiedia ugandensis*
6. *Cola bracteata*
7. *Cordyla richardii*
8. *Crassocephalum bauchiense*
9. *Deschampsia angusta*
10. *Encephalartos macrostrobilus*
11. *Encephalartos whitelockii*
12. *Entandrophragma angolense*
13. *Entandrophragma cylindricum*
14. *Entandrophragma utile*
15. *Euphorbia bwambensis*
16. *Guarea cedrata*
17. *Guarea mayombensis*
18. *Hallea stipulosa*
19. *Khaya anthotheca*
20. *Khaya grandifoliola*
21. *Khaya senegalensis*
22. *Lophira alata*
23. *Lovoa trichilioides*
24. *Memecylon bequaertii*
25. *Mikaniopsis vitalba*
26. *Millettia lacus-alberti*
27. *Nauclea diderrichii*
28. *Ocotea kenyensis*
29. *Pavetta intermedia*
30. *Prunus africana*
31. *Secamone racemosa*
32. *Turraeanthus africanus*
33. *Vitellaria paradoxa*

**This list combines species from several endangered species lists.** Using the total at the bottom of this page as an official count of endangered species of the world is not recommended. For more information on what creatures are listed on this site, please visit our [About Us](#) page.

	<b>Species Name</b>	<b>Scientific Name</b>	<b>Group</b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Code</b>
1.	<u>African Butter Catfish</u>	<i>Schilbe mystus</i>	Fishes	Uganda	1
2.	<u>African Elephant</u>	<i>Loxodonta africana</i>	Mammals	Africa	1
3.	<u>African Golden Cat</u>	<i>Caracal aurata</i>	Mammals	Africa	1

	<b>Species Name</b>	<b>Scientific Name</b>	<b>Group</b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Code</b>
4.	<u>African Gray Parrot</u>	<i>Psittacus erithacus</i>	Birds	Africa	1
5.	<u>African Green Broadbill</u>	<i>Pseudocalyptomena graueri</i>	Birds	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	1
6.	<u>African Lion</u>	<i>Panthera leo</i>	Mammals	Africa, Asia	1
7.	<u>African Mahogany</u>	<i>Khaya ivorensis</i>	Plants	Benin, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Ghana, Guinea, Nigeria, Sudan, Togo, Uganda	1
8.	<u>African Mahogany</u>	<i>Khaya grandifoliola</i>	Plants	Benin, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Ghana, Guinea, Nigeria, Sudan, Togo, Uganda	1
9.	<u>African Mahogany</u>	<i>Khaya anthotheca</i>	Plants	Angola, Cameroon, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Ghana, Liberia, Malawi, Mozambique, Nigeria, Republic of Congo, Sierra Leone, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia, Zimbabwe	1
10.	<u>African Mahogany</u>	<i>Khaya senegalensis</i>	Plants	Benin, Burkina Faso, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Chad, Cote d'Ivoire, Gabon, Gambia, Ghana, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Mali, Niger, Nigeria, Senegal, Sierra Leone, Sudan, Togo, Uganda	1
11.	<u>African Skimmer</u>	<i>Rynchops flavirostris</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Middle East	1
12.	<u>African Walnut</u>	<i>Lovoa trichilioides</i>	Plants	Angola, Cameroon, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Gabon, Ghana, Liberia, Nigeria, Republic of Congo, Sierra Leone, Tanzania, Uganda	1
13.	<u>African White-bellied Pangolin</u>	<i>Phataginus tricuspis</i>	Mammals	Angola, Benin, Cameroon, Central African Republic,	1

	Species Name	Scientific Name	Group	Range	Code
				Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Equatorial Guinea, Gabon, Ghana, Kenya, Liberia, Nigeria, Republic of Congo, Rwanda, Sierra Leone, Sudan, Tanzania, Togo, Uganda, Zambia	
14.	<u>African Wild Dog</u> 🐾	<i>Lycaon pictus</i>	Mammals	Sub-saharan Africa	1
15.	<u>Afrocarpus dawei</u>	<i>Afrocarpus dawei</i>	Plants	Tanzania, Uganda	1
16.	<u>Agriocnemis palaeforma</u>	<i>Agriocnemis palaeforma</i>	Insects	Uganda	1
17.	<u>Ahl's Reed Frog</u>	<i>Hyperolius castaneus</i>	Amphibians	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	1
18.	<u>Albert Lates</u>	<i>Lates macrophthalmus</i>	Fishes	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	1
19.	<u>Albizia ferruginea</u>	<i>Albizia ferruginea</i>	Plants	Angola, Benin, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Gabon, Gambia, Ghana, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Nigeria, Republic of Congo, Senegal, Sierra Leone, Togo, Uganda	1
20.	<u>Antrocaryon</u>	<i>Antrocaryon micraster</i>	Plants	Cameroon, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Ghana, Nigeria, Sierra Leone, Uganda	
21.	<u>Apa</u>	<i>Afzelia bipindensis</i>	Plants	Angola, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Gabon, Nigeria, Republic of Congo, Uganda	
22.	<u>Aspatharia divaricata</u>	<i>Aspatharia divaricata</i>	Clams	Tanzania, Uganda	

	<b>Species Name</b>	<b>Scientific Name</b>	<b>Group</b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Code</b>
23.	<u>Azobe</u>	<i>Lophira alata</i>	Plants	Africa	
24.	<u>Babault's Mouse Shrew</u>	<i>Myosorex babaulti</i>	Mammals	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
25.	<u>Barbus alluaudi</u>	<i>Barbus alluaudi</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
26.	<u>Barbus huloti</u>	<i>Barbus huloti</i>	Fishes	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
27.	<u>Barbour's Vlei Rat</u>	<i>Otomys barbouri</i>	Mammals	Kenya, Uganda	
28.	<u>Basra Reed Warbler</u>	<i>Acrocephalus griseldis</i>	Birds	Botswana, Egypt, Ethiopia, Iran, Israel, Kenya, Kuwait, Malawi, Mozambique, Saudi Arabia, Somalia, Sudan, Tanzania, Uganda	
29.	<u>Beaudouin's Snake-eagle</u>	<i>Circaetus beaudouini</i>	Birds	Burkina Faso, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Chad, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Gambia, Guinea, Mali, Mauritania, Niger, Nigeria, Senegal, Sudan, Uganda	
30.	<u>Beilschmiedia ugandensis</u>	<i>Beilschmiedia ugandensis</i>	Plants	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Sudan, Tanzania, Uganda	
31.	<u>Bellamya jucunda</u>	<i>Bellamya jucunda</i>	Snails	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
32.	<u>Bellamya costulata</u>	<i>Bellamya costulata</i>	Snails	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
33.	<u>Bellamya constricta</u>	<i>Bellamya constricta</i>	Snails	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
34.	<u>Bellamya trochearis</u>	<i>Bellamya trochearis</i>	Snails	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
35.	<u>Bellamya rubicunda</u>	<i>Bellamya rubicunda</i>	Snails	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
36.	<u>Bellamya phthinotropis</u>	<i>Bellamya phthinotropis</i>	Snails	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
37.	<u>Black Crowned-crane</u>	<i>Balearica pavonina</i>	Birds	Africa, Middle East	
38.	<u>Black-tailed Godwit</u>	<i>Limosa limosa</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Australia,	

	Species Name	Scientific Name	Group	Range	Code
				Central America, Europe, Middle East, North America (including United States Territory), Oceanic	
39.	<u>Black-winged Pratincole</u>	<i>Glareola nordmanni</i>	Birds	Africa to Asia	
40.	<u>Blue Swallow</u>	<i>Hirundo atrocaerulea</i>	Birds	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Kenya, Malawi, Mozambique, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia, Zimbabwe	
41.	<u>Brazzeia longipedicellata</u>	<i>Brazzeia longipedicellata</i>	Plants	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
42.	<u>Bread Palm</u>	<i>Encephalartos whitelockii</i>	Plants	Uganda	
43.	<u>Bread Palm</u>	<i>Encephalartos macrostrobilus</i>	Plants	Uganda	
44.	<u>Bread Palm</u>	<i>Encephalartos equatorialis</i>	Plants	Uganda	
45.	<u>Brown Mahogany</u>	<i>Lovoa swynnertonii</i>	Plants	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Kenya, Mozambique, Tanzania, Uganda, Zimbabwe	
46.	<u>Bulinus transversalis</u>	<i>Bulinus transversalis</i>	Snails	Kenya, Uganda	
47.	<u>Bulinus mutandensis</u>	<i>Bulinus mutandensis</i>	Snails	Uganda	
48.	<u>Burnupia stuhlmanni</u>	<i>Burnupia stuhlmanni</i>	Snails	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
49.	<u>Bushoho Reed Frog</u>	<i>Hyperolius frontalis</i>	Amphibians	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
50.	<u>Chapin's Flycatcher</u>	<i>Muscicapa lendu</i>	Birds	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Kenya, Uganda	
51.	<u>Charming Thicket Rat</u>	<i>Thamnomys venustus</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	

	Species Name	Scientific Name	Group	Range	Code
52.	<u>Checkered Sengi</u>	<i>Rhynchocyon cirnei</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Malawi, Mozambique, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia	
53.	<u>Cheetah</u> 📷	<i>Acinonyx jubatus</i>	Mammals	Africa to India	
54.	<u>Chimpanzee</u> 📷	<i>Pan troglodytes</i>	Mammals	Africa	
55.	<u>Chlorocnemis pauli</u>	<i>Chlorocnemis pauli</i>	Insects	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Kenya, Nigeria, Uganda	
56.	<u>Chlorocypha molindica</u>	<i>Chlorocypha molindica</i>	Insects	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
57.	<u>Chlorocypha jacksoni</u>	<i>Chlorocypha jacksoni</i>	Insects	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Kenya, Malawi, Republic of Congo, Tanzania, Uganda	
58.	<u>Cleopatra cridlandi</u>	<i>Cleopatra cridlandi</i>	Snails	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
59.	<u>Common Hippopotamus</u>	<i>Hippopotamus amphibius</i>	Mammals	Africa	
60.	<u>Cordyla richardii</u>	<i>Cordyla richardii</i>	Plants	Sudan, Uganda	
61.	<u>Cream-banded Swallowtail</u>	<i>Papilio leucotaenia</i>	Insects	Burundi, Rwanda, Uganda	
62.	<u>De Graaff's Praomys</u>	<i>Praomys degraaffi</i>	Mammals	Burundi, Rwanda, Uganda	
63.	<u>Delany's Swamp Mouse</u>	<i>Delanymys brooksi</i>	Mammals	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
64.	<u>Denham's Bustard</u>	<i>Neotis denhami</i>	Birds	Africa	
65.	<u>Deschampsia angusta</u>	<i>Deschampsia angusta</i>	Plants	Kenya, Uganda	
66.	<u>Dialium excelsum</u>	<i>Dialium excelsum</i>	Plants	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
67.	<u>Diospyros katendei</u>	<i>Diospyros katendei</i>	Plants	Uganda	
68.	<u>Disc-fingered Reed Frog</u>	<i>Hyperolius discodactylus</i>	Amphibians	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire),	



	Species Name	Scientific Name	Group	Range	Code
				Rwanda, Uganda	
69.	<u>Dragon Tree</u>	<i>Dracaena ombet</i>	Plants	Djibouti, Egypt, Ethiopia, Saudi Arabia, Somalia, Sudan, Uganda	
70.	<u>Dwarf Honeyguide</u>	<i>Indicator pumilio</i>	Birds	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
71.	<u>Eastern Gorilla</u>	<i>Gorilla beringei</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
72.	<u>Egyptian Vulture</u> 📷	<i>Neophron percnopterus</i>	Birds	Europe, Africa, Asia, and the Middle East	
73.	<u>Entandrophragma angolense</u>	<i>Entandrophragma angolense</i>	Plants	Africa	
74.	<u>Entandrophragma utile</u>	<i>Entandrophragma utile</i>	Plants	Africa	
75.	<u>Entandrophragma cylindricum</u>	<i>Entandrophragma cylindricum</i>	Plants	Africa	
76.	<u>Euphorbia bwambensis</u>	<i>Euphorbia bwambensis</i>	Plants	Republic of Congo, Uganda	
77.	<u>Eurasian Curlew</u>	<i>Numenius arquata</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Australia, Central America, Europe, Middle East, North America (United States Territory), Oceanic	
78.	<u>Eurasian Peregrine Falcon</u> 📷	<i>Falco peregrinus peregrinus</i>	Birds	Eurasia south to Africa and Mideast	
79.	<u>Forest Ground-thrush</u>	<i>Zoothera oberlaenderi</i>	Birds	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
80.	<u>Forest Thicket Rat</u>	<i>Grammomys dryas</i>	Mammals	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
81.	<u>Fox's Weaver</u>	<i>Ploceus spekeoides</i>	Birds	Uganda	
82.	<u>Giant Ground Pangolin</u>	<i>Smutsia gigantea</i>	Mammals	Africa	

	<b>Species Name</b>	<b>Scientific Name</b>	<b>Group</b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Code</b>
83.	<u>Golden-naped Weaver</u>	<i>Ploceus aureonucha</i>	Birds	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
84.	<u>Grauer's Cuckooshrike</u>	<i>Coracina graueri</i>	Birds	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
85.	<u>Grauer's Swamp Warbler</u>	<i>Bradypterus graueri</i>	Birds	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
86.	<u>Great Snipe</u>	<i>Gallinago media</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Europe	
87.	<u>Greater Large-headed Shrew</u>	<i>Paracrocidura maxima</i>	Mammals	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
88.	<u>Greater Spotted Eagle</u>	<i>Aquila clanga</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Europe, Middle East	
89.	<u>Guarea cedrata</u>	<i>Guarea cedrata</i>	Plants	Cameroon, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Ghana, Liberia, Nigeria, Republic of Congo, Sierra Leone, Uganda	
90.	<u>Guarea mayombensis</u>	<i>Guarea mayombensis</i>	Plants	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Gabon, Uganda	
91.	<u>Hallea stipulosa</u>	<i>Hallea stipulosa</i>	Plants	Angola, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Gabon, Gambia, Ghana, Guinea, Nigeria, Republic of Congo, Senegal, Sierra Leone, Sudan, Uganda, Zambia	
92.	<u>Haplochromis bayoni</u>	<i>Haplochromis bayoni</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
93.	<u>Haplochromis ishmaeli</u>	<i>Haplochromis ishmaeli</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
94.	<u>Haplochromis oregosoma</u>	<i>Haplochromis oregosoma</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
95.	<u>Haplochromis serranus</u>	<i>Haplochromis serranus</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	

	<b>Species Name</b>	<b>Scientific Name</b>	<b>Group</b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Code</b>
96.	<u>Haplochromis worthingtoni</u>	<i>Haplochromis worthingtoni</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
97.	<u>Haplochromis barbara</u>	<i>Haplochromis barbara</i>	Fishes	Tanzania, Uganda	
98.	<u>Haplochromis heusinkveldi</u>	<i>Haplochromis heusinkveldi</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
99.	<u>Haplochromis obliquidens</u>	<i>Haplochromis obliquidens</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
100.	<u>Haplochromis saxicola</u>	<i>Haplochromis saxicola</i>	Fishes	Tanzania, Uganda	
101.	<u>Haplochromis welcommei</u>	<i>Haplochromis welcommei</i>	Fishes	Tanzania, Uganda	
102.	<u>Haplochromis annectidens</u>	<i>Haplochromis annectidens</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
103.	<u>Haplochromis granti</u>	<i>Haplochromis granti</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
104.	<u>Haplochromis nuchisquamulatus</u>	<i>Haplochromis nuchisquamulatus</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
105.	<u>Haplochromis sauvagei</u>	<i>Haplochromis sauvagei</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
106.	<u>Haplochromis victorianus</u>	<i>Haplochromis victorianus</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
107.	<u>Haplochromis aeneocolor</u>	<i>Haplochromis aeneocolor</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
108.	<u>Haplochromis crassilabris</u>	<i>Haplochromis crassilabris</i>	Fishes	Tanzania, Uganda	
109.	<u>Haplochromis megalops</u>	<i>Haplochromis megalops</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
110.	<u>Haplochromis prodromus</u>	<i>Haplochromis prodromus</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
111.	<u>Haplochromis venator</u>	<i>Haplochromis venator</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
112.	<u>Haplochromis aelocephalus</u>	<i>Haplochromis aelocephalus</i>	Fishes	Tanzania, Uganda	
113.	<u>Haplochromis</u>	<i>Haplochromis</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	

	<b>Species Name</b>	<b>Scientific Name</b>	<b>Group</b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Code</b>
	<u>chromogynos</u>	<i>chromogynos</i>			
114.	<u>Haplochromis maxillaris</u>	<i>Haplochromis maxillaris</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
115.	<u>Haplochromis plagiostoma</u>	<i>Haplochromis plagiostoma</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
116.	<u>Haplochromis velifer</u>	<i>Haplochromis velifer</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
117.	<u>Haplochromis acidens</u>	<i>Haplochromis acidens</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
118.	<u>Haplochromis chilotes</u>	<i>Haplochromis chilotes</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
119.	<u>Haplochromis lividus</u>	<i>Haplochromis lividus</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
120.	<u>Haplochromis phytophagus</u>	<i>Haplochromis phytophagus</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
121.	<u>Haplochromis spekii</u>	<i>Haplochromis spekii</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
122.	<u>Haplochromis brownae</u>	<i>Haplochromis brownae</i>	Fishes	Tanzania, Uganda	
123.	<u>Haplochromis latifasciatus</u>	<i>Haplochromis latifasciatus</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
124.	<u>Haplochromis petronius</u>	<i>Haplochromis petronius</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
125.	<u>Haplochromis sp. nov. 'ruby'</u>	<i>Haplochromis sp. nov. 'ruby'</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
126.	<u>Haplochromis beadlei</u>	<i>Haplochromis beadlei</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
127.	<u>Haplochromis labiatus</u>	<i>Haplochromis labiatus</i>	Fishes	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
128.	<u>Haplochromis paropius</u>	<i>Haplochromis paropius</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
129.	<u>Haplochromis simpsoni</u>	<i>Haplochromis simpsoni</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
130.	<u>Harpagochromis sp. nov. 'frogmouth'</u>	<i>Harpagochromis sp. nov. 'frogmouth'</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Uganda	

	<b>Species Name</b>	<b>Scientific Name</b>	<b>Group</b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Code</b>
131.	<u>Idomacromia jillianae</u>	<i>Idomacromia jillianae</i>	Insects	Uganda	
132.	<u>Jackson's Mongoose</u>	<i>Bdeogale jacksoni</i>	Mammals	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
133.	<u>Kahuzi Swamp Shrew</u>	<i>Crocidura stenocephala</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
134.	<u>Karamoja Apalis</u>	<i>Apalis karamojae</i>	Birds	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
135.	<u>Karissimbi Forest Treefrog</u>	<i>Leptopelis karissimbensis</i>	Amphibians	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
136.	<u>Kivu Banana Frog</u>	<i>Afrixalus orophilus</i>	Amphibians	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
137.	<u>Kivu Ground-thrush</u>	<i>Zoothera tanganjicae</i>	Birds	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
138.	<u>Kivu Tree Frog</u>	<i>Leptopelis kivuensis</i>	Amphibians	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
139.	<u>Kola Nut</u>	<i>Cola duparquetiana</i>	Plants	Uganda	
140.	<u>Kola Nut</u>	<i>Cola bracteata</i>	Plants	Uganda	
141.	<u>Lagden's Bush-shrike</u>	<i>Malaconotus lagdeni</i>	Birds	Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Ghana, Liberia, Rwanda, Sierra Leone, Uganda	
142.	<u>Lappet-faced Vulture</u>	<i>Torgos tracheliotos</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Europe, Middle East	
143.	<u>Large-eared Free-tailed Bat</u>	<i>Otomops martiensseni</i>	Mammals	Africa, Asia, Middle East	
144.	<u>Lesser Flamingo</u>	<i>Phoeniconaias minor</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Europe, Middle East, Oceanic	
145.	<u>Lesser Kestrel</u>	<i>Falco naumanni</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Europe, Middle East	
146.	<u>Lesser Kudu</u>	<i>Tragelaphus imberbis</i>	Mammals	Ethiopia, Kenya, Somalia, Sudan, Tanzania, Uganda	

	Species Name	Scientific Name	Group	Range	Code
147.	<u>Lipochromis sp. nov. 'parvidens-like'</u>	<i>Lipochromis sp. nov. 'parvidens-like'</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
148.	<u>Lipochromis sp. nov. 'small obesoid'</u>	<i>Lipochromis sp. nov. 'small obesoid'</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
149.	<u>Lipochromis sp. nov. 'backflash cryptodon'</u>	<i>Lipochromis sp. nov. 'backflash cryptodon'</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
150.	<u>Lokia coryndoni</u>	<i>Lokia coryndoni</i>	Insects	Uganda	
151.	<u>Maccoa Duck</u>	<i>Oxyura maccoa</i>	Birds	Angola, Botswana, Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Eritrea, Ethiopia, Kenya, Lesotho, Malawi, Namibia, Rwanda, South Africa, Sudan, Swaziland, Tanzania, Uganda, Zimbabwe	
152.	<u>Macroleurodus bicolor</u>	<i>Macroleurodus bicolor</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
153.	<u>Madagascar Pond-heron</u>	<i>Ardeola idae</i>	Birds	Africa	
154.	<u>Marcusenius victoriae</u>	<i>Marcusenius victoriae</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Rwanda, Tanzania, Uganda	
155.	<u>Medium-tailed Brush-furred Rat</u>	<i>Lophuromys medicaudatus</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
156.	<u>Memecylon bequaertii</u>	<i>Memecylon bequaertii</i>	Plants	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
157.	<u>Mikaniopsis vitalba</u>	<i>Mikaniopsis vitalba</i>	Plants	Angola, Cameroon, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Gabon, Uganda	
158.	<u>Millettia lacus-alberti</u>	<i>Millettia lacus-alberti</i>	Plants	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
159.	<u>Montane Mouse Shrew</u>	<i>Myosorex blarina</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
160.	<u>Montane Shaggy</u>	<i>Dasymys montanus</i>	Mammals	Uganda	

	Species Name	Scientific Name	Group	Range	Code
	<u>Rat</u>				
161.	<u>Moon Forest Shrew</u>	<i>Sylvisorex lunaris</i>	Mammals	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
162.	<u>Moon Striped Mouse</u>	<i>Hybomys lunaris</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
163.	<u>Nahan's Francolin</u>	<i>Francolinus nahani</i>	Birds	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
164.	<u>Nauclea diderrichii</u>	<i>Nauclea diderrichii</i>	Plants	Africa	
165.	<u>Neochromis simotes</u>	<i>Neochromis simotes</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
166.	<u>Niobe's Shrew</u>	<i>Crocidura niobe</i>	Mammals	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
167.	<u>Nothobranchius aff. taeniopygus</u>	<i>Nothobranchius aff. taeniopygus</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
168.	<u>Ocotea kenyensis</u>	<i>Ocotea kenyensis</i>	Plants	Africa	
169.	<u>Onychogomphus styx</u>	<i>Onychogomphus styx</i>	Insects	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia	
170.	<u>Oreochromis variabilis</u>	<i>Oreochromis variabilis</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
171.	<u>Oreochromis esculentus</u>	<i>Oreochromis esculentus</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
172.	<u>Pallid Harrier</u>	<i>Circus macrourus</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Europe, Middle East	
173.	<u>Papyrus Gonolek</u>	<i>Laniarius mufumbiri</i>	Birds	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Kenya, Rwanda, Tanzania, Uganda	
174.	<u>Papyrus Yellow Warbler</u>	<i>Chloropeta gracilirostris</i>	Birds	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Kenya, Rwanda, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia	
175.	<u>Paralabidochromis victoriae</u>	<i>Paralabidochromis victoriae</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	

	<b>Species Name</b>	<b>Scientific Name</b>	<b>Group</b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Code</b>
176.	<u>Pavetta intermedia</u>	<i>Pavetta intermedia</i>	Plants	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
177.	<u>Platytaeniodus degeni</u>	<i>Platytaeniodus degeni</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
178.	<u>Potamonautes mutandensis</u>	<i>Potamonautes mutandensis</i>	Crustaceans	Uganda	
179.	<u>Potamonautes ignestii</u>	<i>Potamonautes ignestii</i>	Crustaceans	Ethiopia, Uganda	
180.	<u>Potamonautes gonocristatus</u>	<i>Potamonautes gonocristatus</i>	Crustaceans	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
181.	<u>Prognathochromis sp. nov. 'long snout'</u>	<i>Prognathochromis sp. nov. 'long snout'</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
182.	<u>Pseudagrion bicoerulans</u>	<i>Pseudagrion bicoerulans</i>	Insects	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
183.	<u>Pyxichromis orthostoma</u>	<i>Pyxichromis orthostoma</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
184.	<u>Rahm's Brush-furred Rat</u>	<i>Lophuromys rahmi</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
185.	<u>Red-faced Barbet</u>	<i>Lybius rubrifacies</i>	Birds	Burundi, Rwanda, Tanzania, Uganda	
186.	<u>Ring-necked Francolin</u>	<i>Francolinus streptophorus</i>	Birds	Burundi, Cameroon, Kenya, Rwanda, Tanzania, Uganda	
187.	<u>Rueppell's Vulture</u>	<i>Gyps rueppellii</i>	Birds	Africa	
188.	<u>Ruwenzori Horseshoe Bat</u>	<i>Rhinolophus ruwenzorii</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
189.	<u>Ruwenzori Shrew</u>	<i>Ruwenzorisorex suncooides</i>	Mammals	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
190.	<u>Rwanda River Frog</u>	<i>Phrynobatrachus versicolor</i>	Amphibians	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
191.	<u>Rwenzori Otter Shrew</u>	<i>Micropotamogale ruwenzorii</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	



	Species Name	Scientific Name	Group	Range	Code
192.	<u>Secamone racemosa</u>	<i>Secamone racemosa</i>	Plants	Burundi, Cameroon, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Equatorial Guinea (Bioko), Rwanda, Uganda	
193.	<u>Semi-collared Flycatcher</u>	<i>Ficedula semitorquata</i>	Birds	Africa, Asia, Europe, Middle East	
194.	<u>Shea Butter Tree</u>	<i>Vitellaria paradoxa</i>	Plants	Cameroon, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Ghana, Guinea, Nigeria, Senegal, Sudan, Uganda	
195.	<u>Shelley's Crimson-wing</u>	<i>Cryptospiza shelleyi</i>	Birds	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
196.	<u>Shoebill</u>	<i>Balaeniceps rex</i>	Birds	Burundi, Central African Republic, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Ethiopia, Kenya, Malawi, Rwanda, Sudan, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia	
197.	<u>Shovelmouth</u>	<i>Astatotilapia sp. nov. 'shovelmouth'</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
198.	<u>Straw-coloured Fruit Bat</u>	<i>Eidolon helvum</i>	Mammals	Africa, Asia, Middle East	
199.	<u>Synodontis victoriae</u>	<i>Synodontis victoriae</i>	Fishes	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
200.	<u>Synodontis macrops</u>	<i>Synodontis macrops</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
201.	<u>Taita Falcon</u>	<i>Falco fasciinucha</i>	Birds	Botswana, Ethiopia, Kenya, Malawi, Mozambique, South Africa, Sudan, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia, Zimbabwe	
202.	<u>Tarella Shrew</u>	<i>Crocidura tarella</i>	Mammals	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
203.	<u>Temnick's Ground Pangolin</u> 	<i>Manis temminckii</i>	Mammals	Africa	
204.	<u>Tetrathemis</u>	<i>Tetrathemis</i>	Insects	Uganda	

	<b>Species Name</b>	<b>Scientific Name</b>	<b>Group</b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Code</b>
	<u>ruwensoriensis</u>	<i>ruwensoriensis</i>			
205.	<u>Tetrathemis denticauda</u>	<i>Tetrathemis denticauda</i>	Insects	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Uganda	
206.	<u>Thermodiaptomus galeboides</u>	<i>Thermodiaptomus galeboides</i>	Crustaceans	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
207.	<u>Tropodiaptomus stuhlmanni</u>	<i>Tropodiaptomus stuhlmanni</i>	Crustaceans	Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda	
208.	<u>Turner's Eremomela</u>	<i>Eremomela turneri</i>	Birds	Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Kenya, Uganda	
209.	<u>Turraeanthus africanus</u>	<i>Turraeanthus africanus</i>	Plants	Angola, Benin, Cameroon, Cote d'Ivoire, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Equatorial Guinea, Ghana, Nigeria, Sierra Leone, Uganda	
210.	<u>Varicorhinus ruwenzori</u>	<i>Varicorhinus ruwenzori</i>	Fishes	Uganda	
211.	<u>Victoria Robber</u>	<i>Brycinus jacksonii</i>	Fishes	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Tanzania, Uganda	
212.	<u>Volcano Shrew</u>	<i>Sylvisorex vulcanorum</i>	Mammals	Burundi, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Rwanda, Uganda	
213.	<u>White Rhinoceros</u>	<i>Ceratotherium simum</i>	Mammals	Africa	
214.	<u>White-backed Vulture</u>	<i>Gyps africanus</i>	Birds	Africa	
215.	<u>White-headed Vulture</u>	<i>Trigonoceps occipitalis</i>	Birds	Africa	
216.	<u>White-naped Pigeon</u>	<i>Columba albinucha</i>	Birds	Cameroon, Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire), Sudan, Uganda	
217.	<u>Xystichromis sp. nov. 'Kyoga flameback'</u>	<i>Xystichromis sp. nov. 'Kyoga flameback'</i>	Fishes	Uganda	

## V. LOCAL STANDARDS AND BEST PRACTICE

1.	Guidelines for development of Forest Management Plans (National Forestry Authority, 2005)
2.	A Guide to the Management of Uganda's Tropical Moist Forests for Timber Production (NFA, 2006)
3.	Standards For Boundary Demarcation (NFA, 2005)
4.	A field guide for assessing and restoring growth and development in degraded natural forests in Uganda (NFA, 2007)
5.	Guidelines For Environmental Impact Assessment of Forestry Developments (NFA, 2005)
6.	Guideline for land allocation in Central Forest Reserves (NFA, 2005)
7.	A Field Guide to Exploratory Inventory in Uganda's Tropical Moist Forests in Central Forest Reserves (NFA, 2008)
8.	Designing a licencing system for grazing domestic animals in Central Forest Reserves (NFA, 2005)
9.	Exploratory inventory and integrated stock-survey and management inventory (contained in the report on the Management of Tropical Moist Forests in Uganda, Denis Alder, NFA 2005)
10.	Guidelines for felling trees in built-up areas (NFA, 2003)
11.	Logging in Natural Forests: Supervisor's Toolkit (NFA, 2005)
12.	Plantation development guidelines for Plantation Planning, management, costings, productivity and profitability (NFA, 2006)
13.	Guidelines for Collaborative Forest Management
14.	Guidelines for successful communication at the National Forestry Authority - NFA Guidelines and Standards No. 8 (NFA, 2005)
15.	Guidelines for valuing natural forestry resources in Uganda (NFA, 2006)
16.	Guidelines for valuing plantation forestry resources in Uganda (NFA, 2007)
17.	Guidelines for verification of legal sources of timber – the Case for Central Forest Reserves in Uganda (NFA, 2007)
18.	Tree Improvement for Timber Plantations in Uganda
19.	Threat reduction assessment (TRA): A field manual (NFA, 2008)
20.	Mechanism for collaboration between UWA and the Forestry Department (2003)
21.	Guidelines for the preparation of species action plans at the forest management unit level (David N.L. Hafashimana)
22.	Forest Nature Conservation Master Plan

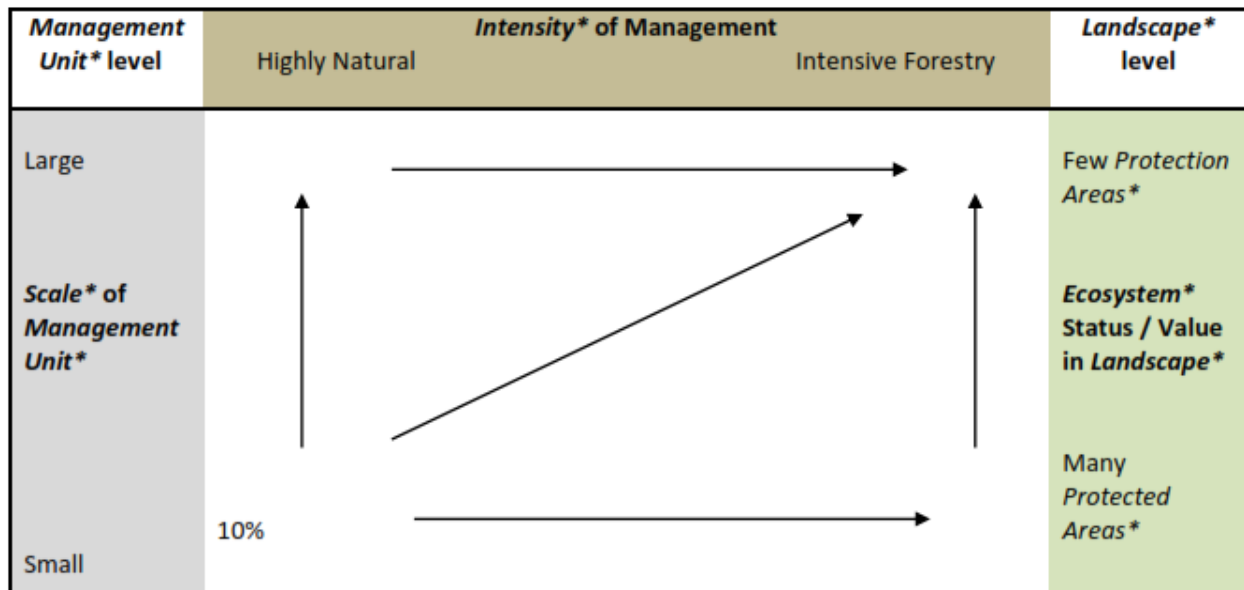
## ANNEX B: TRAINING REQUIREMENTS FOR RELEVANT WORKERS

Relevant workers* are able to:	Executive level workers	Mid-level workers	Low cadre workers
1) Implement forest* activities to comply with applicable legal* requirements (Criterion* 1.5);	x	X	
2) Understand the content, meaning and applicability of the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions (Criterion* 2.1);	x	x	
3) Recognize and report on instances of sexual harassment and gender discrimination (Criterion* 2.2);	x	x	X
4) Safely handle and dispose of hazardous substances to ensure that use does not pose health risks* (Criterion* 2.3);	x	x	X
5) Carry out their responsibilities for particularly dangerous jobs or jobs entailing a special responsibility (Criterion* 2.5).	x	x	X
6) Identify where indigenous peoples* have legal* and customary rights* related to management activities (Criterion* 3.2);	x	X	
7) Identify and implement applicable elements of UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169 (Criterion* 3.4);	x	x	
8) Identify sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to indigenous peoples* and implement the necessary measures to protect them before the start of forest* management activities to avoid negative impacts (Criterion* 3.5 and Criterion* 4.7);	x	x	
9) Identify where local communities* have legal* and customary rights* related to management activities (Criterion* 4.2);	x	X	
10) Carry out social, economic and environmental impact assessments* and develop appropriate mitigation measures (Criterion* 4.5);	X		
11) Handle, apply and store pesticides*. (Criterion* 10.7); and	x	x	X
12) Implement procedures for cleaning up spills of waste materials*. (Criterion* 10.12).	x	x	x

## **ANNEX C: PAYMENTS FOR ECOSYSTEM SERVICES**

*To be developed later after FSC Guide*

**ANNEX D: CONSERVATION AREA DESIGN CONCEPTUAL DIAGRAM**



The diagram shows how the area of the Management Unit\* included in the Conservation Area Network\* is generally expected to increase from the 10% minimum as the size, intensity\* of management, and/or the status and value of ecosystems\* at the landscape\* level each increase. The arrows and their direction represent these increases.

The far right column titled ‘Ecosystems\* Status / Value in the Landscape\*’ signifies the extent to which native ecosystems\* are protected at the landscape\* level and the relative requirements for further protection\* in the Management Unit\*.

The far left column titled ‘Area of Management Unit\*’ shows that as the Management Unit\* area increases, the Management Unit\* will itself be at the landscape\* level and so will be expected to have a Conservation Area Network\* containing functional examples of all of the naturally occurring ecosystems\* for that landscape\*.

## **ANNEX E (i): ELEMENTS OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR NON-LOW IMPACT ORGANIZATIONS**

The following elements shall be included in the Management Plan

### **1) A description of the FMU, including:**

- i. Location, registration of the Organization, as in accordance to Principle 1;
- ii. Legal tenure to manage and use resources;
- iii. Boundaries of the FMU, including a boundary map

### **2) The results of assessments, including:**

- i. Natural resources and environmental values\*, as identified in Principle\* 6 and Principle\* 9;
- ii. Social, economic and cultural resources and condition, as identified in Principle\* 6, Principle\* 2 to Principle\* 5 and Principle\* 9; and
- iii. Major social and environmental risks in the area, as identified in Principle 6, Principle\* 2 to Principle\* 5 and Principle\* 9.

### **3) Programs and activities regarding:**

- i. Workers\*' rights, occupational health and safety, gender equality\*, as identified in Principle\* 4 and Principle 2;
- ii. Indigenous peoples\*, community relations, local economic and social development, identified, as in Principle\* 3, Principle\* 4 and Principle\* 5; and
- iii. Stakeholder engagement\* and the resolution of disputes\*; and grievances, as identified in Principle\* 7 and Principle\* 9;
- iv. Planned management activities and timelines, silvicultural systems used, typical harvesting methods and equipment, as identified in Principle\* 10
- v. The rationale for harvesting rates of timber and other natural resources, as identified in Principle\* 5;

### **4) Measures to conserve\* and/or restore\*:**

- i. Rare and threatened species\* and habitats\*;
- ii. Water bodies\* and riparian zones\*;
- iii. Landscape\* connectivity\*, including wildlife corridors;
- iv. Representative Sample Areas\*, as identified in Principle\* 6; and
- v. High Conservation Values\*, as identified in Principle\* 9

### **5) Measures to assess, prevent, and mitigate negative impacts of management activities on:**

- i. Environmental values\*, as identified in Principle\* 6 and Principle\* 9; and
- ii. Social Values, as identified in Principle\* 2 to Principle\* 5 and Principle\* 9;

### **6) A description of the monitoring\* program, as identified in Principle\* 8, including:**

- i. Growth and yield, as identified in Principle\* 5;
- ii. Environmental values\*, as identified in Principle\* 6;
- iii. Operational impacts, as identified in Principle\* 10;
- iv. High Conservation Values\*, as identified in Principle\* 9; and
- v. Monitoring\* systems based on stakeholder engagement\* planned or in place, as identified in Principle\* 2 to Principle\* 5 and Principle\* 9; and
- vi. Maps describing the natural resources and land use zoning on the Forest\* Management Unit\*.

## **ANNEX E (ii): ELEMENTS OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR SLIMFS**

### **1) A description of the FMU, including:**

- i. Location, registration of the Organization, as in accordance to Principle 1;
- ii. Legal tenure to manage and use resources;
- iii. Boundaries of the FMU, including a boundary map

### **2) Actions regarding:**

- i) Workers\*' rights, occupational health and safety, gender equality\*, as identified in Principle\* 4;
- ii) Indigenous peoples\*, community relations, local economic and social development, identified, as in Principle\* 3, Principle\* 4 and Principle\* 5; and
- iii) Stakeholder engagement\* and the resolution of disputes\*; and grievances, as identified in Principle\* 7 and Principle\* 9;
- iv) Planned management activities and timelines, silvicultural systems used, typical harvesting methods and equipment, as identified in Principle\* 10
- v) The rationale for harvesting rates of timber and other natural resources, as identified in Principle\* 5;

### **3) Actions to conserve\* and/or restore\*:**

- i) Rare and threatened species\* and habitats\*;
- ii) Water bodies\* and riparian zones\*;
- iii) Representative Sample Areas\*, as identified in Principle\* 6; and
- iv) High Conservation Values\*, as identified in Principle\* 9

### **4) Actions to mitigate negative impacts of management activities on:**

- i) Environmental values\*, as identified in Principle\* 6 and Principle\* 9; and
- ii) Social Values, as identified in Principle\* 2 to Principle\* 5 and Principle\* 9;

### **5) Actions to monitor.**

- i) Growth and yield, as identified in Principle\* 5;
- ii) Environmental values\*, as identified in Principle\* 6;
- iii) Operational impacts, as identified in Principle\* 10;
- iv) High Conservation Values\*, as identified in Principle\* 9; and



**ANNEX F (i): CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK FOR PLANNING / MONITORING NON-LOW IMPACT ORGANIZATIONS**

Sample Management Plan Document	Management Plan Revision Periodicity	Element Being Monitored	Monitoring Periodicity	Who Monitors this Element?	FSC Principle / Criterion
Annual Work Plan	Annual	River / stream crossings	When in the field and annually	Field staff	P10
		Roads	When in the field and annually	Field staff	P10
		Natural vegetation belts / patches	Annually Sample	Field staff	P6, P10
		Rare Threatened and Endangered	Annually	Forest Manager	P6
		Annual harvest levels	Annually	Forest Manager	C 5.2
		Insect disease outbreaks	Ongoing	Forest Manager	P 10
Budgeting	Annual	Expenditures	Annually	Finance Manager	P5
		Incomes	Annually	Finance Manager	P5
		Contribution to local economy	Annually	General Manager	P5
Engagement Plan	Annual	Employment statistics	Annually	General Manager	P3, P4
		Social Agreements	A annually as agreed in Engagement Plan	Social Coordinator	P3, P4
		Internal grievances and disputes	Ongoing	Human Resource Manager	P2, P3, P4
		External grievances and disputes	Ongoing	General Manager	P2, P3, P4
Forest Management Plan	5years	wildlife populations	5 years	Consultants	P6
		Rare Threatened and Endangered	Every 3 years	Consultants	P6
		Age/size class distribution	5 years	Forest Manager	P10
		course/ woody	annually	Forest Manager	P10

<b>Sample Management Plan Document</b>	<b>Management Plan Revision Periodicity</b>	<b>Element Being Monitored</b>	<b>Monitoring Periodicity</b>	<b>Who Monitors this Element?</b>	<b>FSC Principle / Criterion</b>
		debris			
		Free growing/ regeneration	annually; sample	Forest Manager	P10
		Species – site performance	Every 3 years	Forest Manager	P10

**ANNEX F (ii): CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK FOR PLANNING / MONITORING FOR SLIMFs**

<b>Sample Management Plan Document</b>	<b>Management Plan Revision Periodicity</b>	<b>Element Being Monitored</b>	<b>Monitoring Periodicity</b>	<b>Who Monitors this Element</b>	<b>FSC Principle / Criterion</b>
Annual Work Plan	Annual	River / stream crossings	When in the field and annually	Field staff	P10
		Roads	When in the field and annually	Field staff	P10
		Natural vegetation belts / patches	Annually Sample	Field staff	P6, P10
		Rare Threatened and Endangered	Annually	Forest Manager	P6
		Annual harvest levels	Annually	Forest Manager	C 5.2
		Insect disease outbreaks	Ongoing	Forest Manager	P 10
Budgeting	Annual	Expenditures	Annually	Finance Manager	P5
		Incomes	Annually	Finance Manager	P5
Forest Management Plan	5years	Age/size class distribution	5 years	Forest Manager	P10
		course/ woody debris	annually	Forest Manager	P10
		Free growing/ regeneration	annually;	Forest Manager	P10
		Species – site performance	Ongoing	Forest Manager	P10
		Employment statistics	Annually	General Manager	P3, P4
		Community based activities	Annually	General Manager	P5
		Internal grievances and disputes	Ongoing	Human Resource Manager	P2, P3, P4
		External grievances and disputes	Ongoing	General Manager	P2, P3, P4

## ANNEX G (i): MONITORING REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-LOW IMPACT ORGANIZATIONS

### Monitoring Requirements

#### **1) Monitoring\* in 8.2.1 is sufficient to identify and describe the environmental impacts of management activities, including, where applicable:**

- i. The results of regeneration activities (Criterion\* 10.1);
- ii. The use of ecologically well adapted species for regeneration (Criterion\* 10.2)
- iii. Invasiveness or other adverse impacts associated with any alien species\* within and outside the Management Unit\* (Criterion\* 10.3);
- iv. The use of genetically modified organisms\* to confirm that they are not being used. (Criterion\* 10.4);
- v. The results of silvicultural activities (Criterion\* 10.5);
- vi. Adverse impacts to environmental values\* from fertilizers\* (Criterion\* 10.6);
- vii. Adverse impacts from the use of pesticides\* (Criterion\* 10.7)
- viii. Adverse impacts from the use of biological control agents (Criterion\* 10.8);
- ix. The impacts from natural hazards\* (Criterion\* 10.9);
- x. The impacts of infrastructural development\*, transport activities and silviculture to rare and threatened species\*, habitats\*, ecosystems\*, landscape values\*, water and soils (Criterion\* 10.10);
- xi. The impacts of harvesting and extraction of timber on non-timber forest products\*, environmental values\*, merchantable wood waste and other products and services (Criterion\* 10.11); and
- xii. Environmentally appropriate disposal of waste materials\* (Criterion\* 10.12)

#### **2) Monitoring\* in 8.2.1 is sufficient to identify and describe social impacts of management activities, including where applicable:**

- i. Evidence of illegal or unauthorized activities (Criterion\* 1.4);
- ii. Compliance with applicable laws\*, local laws\*, ratified\* international conventions and obligatory codes of practice\* (Criterion\* 1.5);
- iii. Resolution of disputes\* and grievances (Criterion\* 1.6, Criterion\* 2.6,  
i. Criterion\* 4.6);
- iv. Programs and activities regarding workers'\* rights (Criterion\* 2.1);
- v. Gender equality\*, Sexual harassment and gender discrimination (Criterion\* 2.2);
- vi. Programs and activities regarding occupational health and safety (Criterion\* 2.3);
- vii. Payment of wages (Criterion\* 2.4);
- viii. Worker\* Training (Criterion\* 2.5);
- ix. Where pesticides\* are used, the health of workers\* exposed to pesticides\* (Criterion\* 2.5 and Criterion\* 10.7)

- x. The identification of indigenous peoples\* and local communities\* and their legal\* and customary rights\* (Criterion\* 3.1 and Criterion\* 4.1);
- xi. Full implementation of the terms in binding agreements\* (Criterion\* 3.2 and Criterion\* 4.2);
- xii. Indigenous peoples\* and community relations (Criterion\* 3.2, Criterion 3.3 and Criterion\* 4.2);
- xiii. Protection\* of sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to indigenous peoples\* and local communities\* (Criterion\* 3.5 and Criterion\* 4.7);
- xiv. The use of traditional knowledge\* and intellectual property\* (Criterion\* 3.6 and Criterion\* 4.8);
- xv. Local economic and social development (Criterion\* 4.2, Criterion\* 4.3, Criterion\* 4.4, Criterion\* 4.5);
- xvi. The production of diversified benefits and / or products (Criterion\* 5.1);
- xvii. The maintenance and/or enhancement of *ecosystem services\** (Criterion\* 5.1);  
Activities to maintain or enhance *ecosystem services\** (Criterion\* 5.1);
- xviii. Actual compared to projected annual harvests of timber and *non-timber forest products\** (Criterion\* 5.2);
- xix. The use of local processing, local services and local value added manufacturing (Criterion\* 5.4);
- xx. *Long term\* economic viability\** (Criterion\* 5.5); and
- xxi. *High Conservation Values\** 5 and 6 identified in Criterion\* 9.1

**3) Monitoring procedures in 8.2.2 are sufficient to identify and describe changes in environmental conditions including where applicable:**

- i. The maintenance and/or enhancement of *ecosystem services\** (Criterion\* 5.2) (when *The Organization\** makes FSC promotional claims regarding the provision of *ecosystem services\**, or receives payment for the provision of *ecosystem services\**);
- ii. Environmental values\* and ecosystem functions\* including carbon sequestration and storage (Criterion\* 6.1); including the effectiveness of actions identified and implemented to prevent, mitigate and repair negative impacts to environmental values\* (Criterion 6.3);
- iii. Rare threatened and endangered species\*, and the effectiveness of actions implemented to protect them and their habitats\*(Criterion\* 6.4);
- iv. Representative sample areas\* and the effectiveness of actions implemented to conserve\* and/or restore\* them (Criterion\* 6.5);
- v. Naturally occurring native species\* and biological diversity\* and the effectiveness of actions implemented to conserve\* and/or restore\* them (Criterion\* 6.6);
- vi. Water courses, *water bodies\**, water quantity and water quality and the effectiveness of actions implemented to *conserve\** and/or *restore\** them (Criterion\* 6.7);
- vii. Landscape values\* and the effectiveness of actions implemented to maintain and/or restore\* them (Criterion\* 6.8);
- viii. Conversion of natural forest\* to plantations\* or conversion to non-forest\* (Criterion\* 6.9);
- ix. The status of plantations\* established after 1994 (Criterion\* 6.10); and
- x. High Conservation Values\* 1 to 4 identified in Criterion\* 9.1 and the effectiveness of actions implemented to maintain and/or enhance them.

**4) Monitoring procedures in 8.2.2 are sufficient to identify and describe changes in the High Conservation Values which include:**

- i. Implementation of strategies;
- ii. The status of High Conservation Values\* including High Conservation areas on which they
- iii. depend; and
- iv. The effectiveness of the management strategies and actions for the protection\* of the High Conservation Values\* to fully maintain and/or enhance the High Conservation Values\*.

## ANNEX G (ii): MONITORING REQUIREMENTS FOR SLIMFs

### **1) Monitoring\* in 8.2.1 is sufficient to identify and describe the environmental impacts of management activities, including:**

- i. The results of regeneration activities (*Criterion\** 10.1);
- ii. Invasiveness or other adverse impacts associated with any *alien species\** within and outside the *Management Unit\** (*Criterion\** 10.3);
- iii. The results of silvicultural activities (*Criterion\** 10.5);
- iv. The impacts from *natural hazards\** (*Criterion\** 10.9);
- v. The impacts of *infrastructural development\**, transport activities and silviculture (*Criterion\** 10.10);
- vi. The impacts of harvesting and extraction of timber on *non-timber forest products\**, (*Criterion\** 10.11); and
- vii. Environmentally appropriate disposal of *waste materials\** (*Criterion\** 10.12)

### **2) Monitoring\* in 8.2.1 is sufficient to identify and describe social impacts of management activities, including where applicable:**

- i. Evidence of illegal or unauthorized activities (*Criterion\** 1.4);
- ii. Compliance with applicable laws\*, local laws\*, (*Criterion\** 1.5);
- iii. Resolution of disputes\* and grievances (*Criterion\** 1.6, *Criterion\** 2.6, *Criterion\** 4.6);
- iv. Programs and activities regarding workers'\* rights (*Criterion\** 2.1);
- v. Activities regarding occupational health and safety (*Criterion\** 2.3);
- vi. Payment of wages (*Criterion\** 2.4);
- vii. Worker\* Training (*Criterion\** 2.5);
- viii. The identification of indigenous peoples\* and local communities\* and their legal\* and customary rights\* (*Criterion\** 3.1 and *Criterion\** 4.1);
- ix. Indigenous peoples\* and community relations (*Criterion\** 3.2, *Criterion\** 3.3 and *Criterion\** 4.2);
- x. Protection\* of sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to indigenous peoples\* and local communities\* (*Criterion\** 3.5 and *Criterion\** 4.7);
- xi. The production of diversified benefits and / or products (*Criterion\** 5.1);
- xii. Actual compared to projected annual harvests of timber and non-timber forest products\* (*Criterion\** 5.2);
- xiii. High Conservation Values\* 5 and 6 identified in *Criterion\** 9.1.

### **3) Monitoring procedures in 8.2.2 are sufficient to identify and describe changes in environmental conditions including where applicable:**

- i. Rare threatened and endangered species\*, and the effectiveness of actions implemented to protect them and their habitats\* (*Criterion\** 6.4);
- ii. *Representative sample areas\** and the effectiveness of actions implemented to *conserve\** and/or *restore\** them (*Criterion\** 6.5);
- iii. Water courses, water bodies\* and water quality and the effectiveness of actions implemented to *conserve\** and/or *restore\** them (*Criterion\** 6.7);
- iv. Conversion of *natural forest\** to *plantations\** or conversion to *non-forest\** (*Criterion\** 6.9);

### **4) Actions to monitor HCVs cover at a minimum:**

- i. The status of High Conservation Values\* including High Conservation areas on which they depend; and
- ii. The effectiveness of the management actions for the protection\* of the High Conservation Values\* to fully maintain and/or enhance the High Conservation Values.



## **ANNEX H: STRATEGIES FOR MAINTAINING HIGH CONSERVATION VALUES\***

### **INSTRUCTIONS FOR STANDARD DEVELOPERS:**

Standard Developers *shall\** consider the following strategies to inform the development of indicators to maintain *High Conservation Values\**.

Strategies for maintaining *High Conservation Values\** may not necessarily preclude harvesting. However, the only way to maintain some *High Conservation Values\** will be through *protection\** of the *High Conservation Value Area\** that supports them.

HCV 1 – Protection zones, harvest prescriptions, and/or other strategies to protect threatened, endangered, endemic species, or other concentrations of *biological diversity\** and the ecological communities and *habitats\** upon which they depend, sufficient to prevent reductions in the extent, integrity, quality, and viability of the *habitats\** and species occurrences. Where enhancement is identified as the *objective\**, measures to develop, expand, and/or *restore\** *habitats\** for such species are in place.

HCV 2 – Strategies that fully maintain the extent and intactness of the *forest\* ecosystems\** and the viability of their biodiversity concentrations, including plant and animal indicator species, keystone species, and/or guilds associated with large intact *natural forest\* ecosystems\**. Examples include *protection\** zones and set-aside areas, with any commercial activity in areas that are not set-aside being limited to low- *intensity\** operations that fully maintain *forest\** structure, composition, regeneration, and disturbance patterns at all times. Where enhancement is identified as the *objective\**, measures to *restore\** and reconnect *forest\* ecosystems\**, their intactness, and *habitats\** that support natural *biological diversity\** are in place.

HCV 3 – Strategies that fully maintain the extent and integrity of rare or threatened *ecosystems\**, *habitats\**, or *refugia\**. Where enhancement is identified as the *objective\**, measures to *restore\** and/or develop rare or threatened *ecosystems\**, *habitats\**, or *refugia\** are in place.

HCV 4 – Strategies to protect any water catchments of importance to *local communities\** located within or downstream of the *Management Unit\**, and areas within the unit that are particularly unstable or susceptible to erosion. Examples may include *protection\** zones, harvest prescriptions, chemical use restrictions, and/or prescriptions for road construction and maintenance, to protect water catchments and upstream and upslope areas. Where enhancement is identified as the *objective\**, measures to *restore\** water quality and quantity are in place. Where identified HCV 4 *ecosystem services\** include climate regulation, strategies to maintain or enhance carbon sequestration and storage are in place.

HCV 5 – Strategies to protect the community's and/or *Indigenous Peoples'\** needs in relation to the *Management Unit\** are developed in cooperation with representatives and members of *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**.

HCV 6 – Strategies to protect the cultural values are developed in cooperation with representatives and members of *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**.

## ANNEX I: HIGH CONSERVATION VALUE FRAMEWORK

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
<b>HCV 1 – Species diversity. Concentrations of biological diversity* including endemic species, and rare*, threatened* or endangered species, that are significant* at global, regional or national levels.</b>		
HCV1.1 Protected areas (national parks, wildlife reserves, central forest reserves )	All Protected Areas supporting at least one tree/shrub species not found elsewhere in Uganda’s protected area system	See Map in Annex I(i) extracted from the Uganda Forest Nature Conservation Master Plan(FNCMP) showing the minimum critical sites required to protect all tree/shrub species in Uganda
	All Strict Nature Reserves as provided for in the Uganda Nature Conservation Master Plan	Forests selected for Nature Reserve establishment are listed in Annex I (ii)
	RAMSAR Sites	See Annex I(iii)
	UNESCO designated Natural World Heritage Sites	So far three sites have been recognised by UNESCO: Bwindi Impenetrable National Park, Rwenzori Mountains National Park, Tombs of Buganda Kings at Kasubi, Kampala
HCV1.2 Threatened and endangered species	Forest areas containing any threatened and endangered species in the IUCN Red List for Uganda	See National RedList For Uganda covering mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, butterflies, dragonflies, and vascular Plants on <a href="http://www.nationalredlist.org/files/2016/03/National-Redlist-for-Uganda.pdf">http://www.nationalredlist.org/files/2016/03/National-Redlist-for-Uganda.pdf</a>

<b>HCV Category</b>	<b>National Description</b>	<b>Additional SDG comments</b>
HCV1.3 Endemic species	Forests containing species that are endemic to Uganda, as described in the Forest Nature Conservation Master Plan.	See National RedList For Uganda cited above
	Forests containing species that are regionally endemic	See National Red List for Uganda cited above. Species that are endemic in the Abertine Rift, Mt. Elgon, Sango Bay/Minziro and other cross-border forests are considered regionally endemic
HCV1.4 Critical temporal use	Critical breeding sites,	All lakes, rivers, floodplains, and swamps are critical fish breeding and nursery grounds; all Important Bird areas in Uganda
	migration sites,	All Important Bird areas in Uganda and wildlife corridors
	migration routes or corridors	Rivers and wetlands that pass through PAs, riverine forests, private forests located between PAs.
	Seasonal feeding sites	Includes all bird breeding sites and fish breeding areas.
	Sites of special scientific interest as defined in the National Forestry and Tree Planting Act, 2003	All SNRs will be considered to be sites of special scientific interest
	Areas which are nationally designated for production of tree seed	All Strict Nature Reserves and National seed sources
1. Description of Best Available Information in the country for identifying HCV1:	Use of the Uganda Forestry Nature Conservation Master Plan, National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan, Uganda Forestry Biodiversity reports, UWA & NFA documents, State of Environment reports, Research reports from NARO & Universities	All these documents can be accessed in the relevant institutions

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
2. Description of interested and affected stakeholders:	<p>The lead Natural Resource management agencies (e.g. Uganda Wildlife Authority, National Forestry Authority), Research organizations, Indigenous peoples &amp; local communities, Higher educational institutions, Ministry of Water &amp; Environment, Ministry of Trade &amp; Industry, and other main stream ministries, certification bodies, private forestry organizations, local governments and civil society</p> <p>Affected stakeholder will mainly be the local communities surrounding the HCV areas</p>	The protected area management authorities have been entering MoUs with local communities living adjacent to the protected areas in the spirit of collaborative management.
3. Description of culturally appropriate engagement for identifying HCVs:	Description of culturally appropriate engagement for identifying HCVs: engagement will be community specific	The Constitution of the Republic of Uganda recognizes indigenous communities, (Third Schedule) which demonstrates the cultural diversity in the country but interviews with communities can provide valuable guidance in what is culturally appropriate engagement
4. Examples of HCV1 species in the country:	See National Red List for Uganda cited above for the full list covering mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, butterflies, dragonflies, and vascular Plants	Refer to: <a href="http://www.nationalredlist.org/files/2016/03/National-Redlist-for-Uganda.pdf">http://www.nationalredlist.org/files/2016/03/National-Redlist-for-Uganda.pdf</a>
5. Geographic areas where HCV1 is likely present:	<p>Nationwide especially in the national parks, wildlife reserves, central forest reserves , Wetlands, Rivers and Lakes</p> <p>The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan lists the following</p>	<p>See Annex I (v) showing the location of Protected Areas and main lakes</p> <p>It is estimated that over 50% of Uganda’s wildlife resources still remain outside designated PAs, which is of most urgent concern for</p>

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
	biodiversity hotspots in Uganda: a) Mgahinga Gorilla National Park and Bwindi Impenetrable National Park - the mountain gorilla ( <i>Gorilla gorillaberengei</i> ) and other regionally and globally endemic species b) Rwenzori Mountain National Park — bay duiker ( <i>Ceplahopfu.cleucogaster</i> ) c) Sango bay wetlands and forest ecosystem — biodiversity of global significance d) Kibale National Park — globally and regionally endemic species, primate species richness e) Dry mountains of Karamoja (Napa, Morungole, Kadam, Timu and Moroto) — regional and global endemics f) Lake Victoria — cichlid and Nile perch species (alien species invasion) g) Papyrus swamps of Lake Edward, George and Bunyonyi which have, among others, the endemic papyrus ( <i>Chloropetragraciliosiris</i> )	protection and development <sup>3</sup> . Aquatic biodiversity is to a large extent, outside the PA system <sup>4</sup>
6. Maps of HCV1 areas in the country:	Maps of HCV1 areas in the country: Maps available in Uganda Wildlife Authority, National Forestry Authority, Wildlife Conservation Society	Annexes I (i) – (v)
7. Threats to HCV1 areas in the country:	Threats to HCV1 areas in the country: poaching, encroachments, overharvesting, corruption, poor governance, change of land use, invasive species, Human-wildlife conflicts:	A Threat Assessment will be done specific to each location but the generic threats are overharvesting, corruption, poor governance, Human-wildlife conflicts.
<b>STRATEGIES FOR MAINTAINING HCV1</b>	<b>National Description</b>	

<sup>3</sup>NEMA(2016), National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan II (2015-2025)

<sup>4</sup>Op cit

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
1) Protection zones, harvest prescriptions, and/or other strategies to protect threatened, endangered, endemic species, or other concentrations of biological diversity* and the ecological communities and habitats* upon which they depend, sufficient to prevent reductions in the extent, integrity, quality, and viability of the habitats* and species occurrences.	<p>(i) Zoning for various management purposes (e.g. Strict Nature Reserves, Buffer Zones, Production Zones, Sites of Specific Scientific Interest)</p> <p>(ii) Development of good practice guidelines and standards (e.g. for low impact harvesting, routine monitoring, community participation, establishment and measurement of permanent sample plots, communication)</p> <p>(iii) General protection and conservation measures.</p>	The management strategies although mostly generic will vary from location to location, Management Unit to management Unit and type of forest.
2) Where enhancement is identified as the objective*, measures to develop, expand, and/or restore* habitats* for such species are in place.	Some of the enhancement measures could include reforestation, afforestation, natural regeneration, and assisted regeneration, backed by community participation, community education. And protection against unauthorized activities	Decision to enhance will normally be done after an assessment has revealed a need for it. See NFA's <i>A Field Guide for Assessing and Restoring Growth and Development in Degraded Natural Forests In Uganda</i>
<b>MONITORING HCV1</b>	Regular patrols against unauthorized activities, regulation of harvesting, and specific studies.	Progress on the monitoring activities will normally be reflected in periodic reports by the management authorities, Specialised studies by researchers and planners, funding agencies, etc.
<b>HCV 2 – Landscape*-level ecosystems* and mosaics. Intact forest landscapes and large landscape*-level ecosystems* and ecosystem* mosaics that are significant* at global,</b>	The FNCMP takes the view that forests that are mainly rainforest trees, and large animals which occur naturally at densities of 2-4 individual per km <sup>2</sup> , require an area of 125-250 km <sup>2</sup> (or 12,500 – 25,000 ha) of suitable habitat to remain viable in the long term.	Going by the definition of IFL <sup>5</sup> , it is difficult to find any IFLs outside PAs of this size in Uganda, but as far as was possible, SNRs were located in the areas which were far from common human activities and therefore were seen as least

<sup>5</sup>An Intact Forest Landscape (IFL) is a seamless mosaic of forest and naturally treeless ecosystems within the zone of current forest extent, which exhibit no remotely detected signs of human activity or habitat fragmentation and is large enough to maintain all native biological diversity, including viable populations of wide-ranging species. IFLs have high conservation value and are critical for stabilizing terrestrial carbon storage, harboring biodiversity, regulating hydrological regimes, and providing other ecosystem functions (<http://www.intactforests.org/data.ifl.html>)

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
<p><b>regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.</b></p>	<p>Therefore all Strict Nature Reserves and the Buffer Zones totaling more than 12,500 ha in each of these forests have been categorized as Intact Forest Landscapes (IFLs). Annex I (vi) shows the IFL areas. Other National Parks were not assessed, but they should also be considered as IFLs.</p>	<p>disturbed.</p> <p>Even with the areas now identified as IFLs, some degradation has taken place since they were set aside as SNRs &amp; BZs. Therefore there is need for a quick survey to establish the extent to which they areas have remained intact, and thus to qualify for categorization as IFLs</p>
<p>1. Description of Best Available Information in the country for identifying HCV2:</p>	<p>FNCMP, National Biomass study reports, maps and data, reports of specific studies</p>	<p>Wildlife Conservation Society has done a lot of conservation and related especially in PAs in the Albertine Rift.</p>
<p>2. Description of interested and affected stakeholders:</p>	<p>The lead Natural Resource management agencies (e.g. Uganda Wildlife Authority, National Forestry Authority), Research organizations, local communities, Higher educational institutions, Ministry of Water &amp; Environment, Ministry of Trade &amp; Industry, certification bodies, private forestry organizations, local communities and Local governments.</p>	<p>A stakeholder analysis will be done for each FMU but the list here is a guide to national interested and affected stakeholders.</p>
<p>3. Examples of HCV2 areas in the country:</p>	<p>See Annex I (vi)</p>	
<p>4. Geographic areas where IFLs or other types of HCV2 is likely present: IFLs are present in Angola, Argentina, Australia, Belize, Bhutan, Bolivia, Brazil, Brunei, Cambodia, Cameroon, Canada, Central African Republic, Chile, China, Colombia, Congo DRC,</p>	<p>Country wide but in the forests listed in Annex I (vi)</p>	<p>The Albertine Rift in Western Uganda is the last extension towards Eastern Africa of the Congo-Basin that holds large expanses of the African IFLs.</p>



HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
<p>Costa Rica, Cote d'Ivoire, Dominican Rep, Ecuador, Equatorial Guinea, Ethiopia, Finland, French Guiana, Gabon, Georgia, Guatemala, Guyana, Honduras, India, Indonesia, Japan, Kazakhstan, Laos, Liberia, Madagascar, Malaysia, Mexico, Mongolia, Myanmar, New Zealand, Nicaragua, Nigeria, Norway, Panama, Papua N Guinea, Paraguay, Peru, Philippines, Repl. Congo, Russia, Solomon Islands, Suriname, Sweden, Tanzania, Thailand, Uganda, United States, Venezuela and Vietnam. See IFL shape files:  <a href="https://www.dropbox.com/s/o4icmu9uujn3nvw/IFL_final_data_UMD_20150121.zip?dl=0">https://www.dropbox.com/s/o4icmu9uujn3nvw/IFL_final_data_UMD_20150121.zip?dl=0</a></p> <p>In the absence of a robust process, reliable science and consensus orientated outcome connected to the implementation of motion 65, the default IFL protection threshold shall be 80% of the of the Intact Forest Landscapes* within the Management Unit</p>		
<p>5. Maps of HCV2 areas in the country:</p>	<p>Maps of HCV2 areas in the country: Zonation maps showing SNRs and BZs are available in the FNCMP appendices</p>	<p>See “The Minimum Critical Set of Sites Required to Protect All Tree/Shrub Species” included in Annex I</p>

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
6. Threats to HCV2 areas in the country:	Threats to HCV2 areas in the country: poaching, encroachments, overharvesting, corruption, poor governance, change of land use, Human-wildlife conflicts	A Threat Assessment will be done specific to each location but the generic threats are overharvesting, corruption, poor governance, Human-wildlife conflicts.
<b>STRATEGIES FOR MAINTAINING HCV2</b>		
1) Strategies that fully maintain the extent and intactness of the forest* ecosystems* and the viability of their biodiversity concentrations, including plant and animal indicator species, keystone species, and/or guilds associated with large intact natural forest* ecosystems*.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Areas designated as SNRs and BZs</li> <li>• Areas protected in National Parks</li> <li>• Landscape restoration activities</li> <li>• Ecotourism in BZs to bolster economic feasibility</li> <li>• Forest based enterprises and benefit sharing with communities living in adjacent areas</li> <li>• Assisted regeneration in natural forests</li> <li>• Improvement of agricultural practices outside the IFL areas to limit spread into the IFLs</li> </ul>	The strategies are IFL specific
2) Examples include protection* zones and set-aside areas, with any commercial activity in areas that are not set-aside being limited to low-intensity* operations that fully maintain forest* structure, composition, regeneration, and disturbance patterns at all times.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Strict nature reserves and buffer zones as described in the FNMCP;</li> <li>• low impact production zones in natural forests</li> <li>• non-consumptive community use in National Parks</li> </ul>	At the individual FMU level all the zones will be clearly shown on a map and displayed
3) Where enhancement is identified as the objective*, measures to restore* and reconnect forest* ecosystems*, their intactness, and habitats* that support natural biological diversity* are in	Some of the enhancement measures could include natural regeneration, and assisted regeneration, backed by community participation, community education and protection against unauthorized activities.	These measures will be necessary especially in BZs and fringe areas of NPs and SNR where they easily accessible from the community settlements

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
place.		
4) The core area of each Intact Forest Landscape* within the Management Unit* is protected, comprising at least 80% of the Intact Forest Landscapes within the Management Unit.	SNRs are the core areas of the forest reserves, with BZs to absorb the pressures for use of the forest. 80% protection can be achieved for NPs	No harvesting is allowed in all Strict Nature Reserves
<b>MONITORING HCV2</b>	Regular patrols against unauthorized activities, regulation of harvesting, and issue specific studies.	
<b>HCV3 – Ecosystems* and habitats*. Rare*, threatened*, or endangered ecosystems*, habitats* or refugia*.</b>	Ecosystems containing Prime, Core and Secondary Conservation forests as described in the Forest Nature Conservation Master Plan	Annex I(i)
IDENTIFICATION OF HCV3		
1. Description of Best Available Information in the country for identifying HCV3:	FNCMP, Uganda Forestry Biodiversity reports, National Biomass Study Reports and maps	The National Biomass Study Unit at the NFA monitors changes in land cover in Uganda. Ideally the surveys are done once every 5 years but in reality, it is done when financial resources become available.
2. Description of Interested and affected stakeholders:	The lead Natural Resource management agencies (e.g. Uganda Wildlife Authority, National Forestry Authority), Research organizations, local communities, Higher educational institutions, Ministry of Water & Environment, Ministry of Trade & Industry, certification bodies, private	A stakeholder analysis will be done for each FMU but the list here is a guide to national interested and affected stakeholders.

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
	forestry organizations,	
3. Examples of HCV3 ecosystems and habitats in the country:	Prime and Core Conservation forests as described in the Uganda Forestry Nature Conservation Master Plan	Annex I(i)
4. Geographic areas where HCV3 is likely present:	Country wide	Annex I(i)
5. Maps of HCV3 areas in the country:	Maps of HCV3 areas in the country: Maps available in Uganda Wildlife Authority, National Forestry Authority, Wildlife Conservation Society	Annex I(i) shows the distribution of the Minimum Critical Set of Sites Required to Protect All Tree/Shrub Species in Uganda. For each of these forests more detailed maps showing boundaries, stage of vegetation cover, etc. can be produced by National Biomass Study Unit on request.
6. Threats to HCV3 areas in the country:	Threats to HCV3 areas in the country: poaching, encroachments, overharvesting, corruption, poor governance, change of land use	A Threat Assessment will be done specific to each location but the generic threats are overharvesting, corruption, poor governance, Human-wildlife conflicts.
<b>STRATEGIES FOR MAINTAINING HCV3</b>		
5) Strategies that fully maintain the extent and integrity of rare or threatened ecosystems*, habitats*, or refugia*.	Protection, inventories at regular intervals; collaborative forest management; research, cross-border joint action, and others depending on the FMU	Cross-border joint actions refer to ecosystems that cross national and sub-national political boundaries
6) Where enhancement is identified as the objective*, measures to restore* and/or develop rare or threatened ecosystems*, habitats*, or	habitat restoration, including protection, collaborative forest management, encouraging natural regeneration, and other strategies	A restoration Assessment will be done specific to each location and implemented

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
refugia* are in place.	depending on the FMU	
MONITORING HCV3	Patrols, demarcation of boundaries, strict regulation of harvesting, strict code of conduct, adopt legally acceptable procedures for land use change	
<b>HCV4 – Critical* ecosystem services*. Basic ecosystem services* in critical* situations, including protection* of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.</b>		
HCV4.1 Forests critical to water catchments	Forest Reserves serving the water catchment functions are listed in Annex (vii)	Most of the other CFRs not listed here also have ecological functions but they are categorized as serving mainly the industrial plantations or local community investment functions <sup>6</sup>
HCV4.2 Forests critical to erosion control	Forests on steep slopes, defined in the National Environment (Hilly And Mountainous Area Management) Regulations, 2000 as having a slope of 15 % and above	CFRs serving the functions of soil erosion control are listed in Annex I (vii). All water catchment forests are in this category
HCV4.3 Forests providing barriers to destructive fire	Forest areas providing shelterbelts to fire susceptible infrastructural installations and established forest plantations will be considered HCV4	These will include natural forest belts and forest plantation belts of fire resistant species
<b>IDENTIFICATION OF HCV4</b>		

<sup>6</sup> NFA, 2008: Managing Central Forest Reserves for the People of Uganda: Volume 2: Functions of Central Forest Reserves in Uganda

<b>HCV Category</b>	<b>National Description</b>	<b>Additional SDG comments</b>
1. Description of Best Available Information in the country for identifying HCV4:	Forest Management Plans usually provide information on topography  Specialised studies such as Environmental and Social Impact Assessment Reports	Various studies have been undertaken in different parts of the Country by the Forest Sector Support Department (FSSD) and National Environment Management Authority (NEMA) on ecosystem services, including protection of water catchments
2. Description of Interested and affected stakeholders:	The lead Natural Resource management agencies (e.g. Uganda Wildlife Authority, National Forestry Authority), Research organizations, local communities, Higher educational institutions, Ministry of Water & Environment, Ministry of Trade & Industry, certification bodies, private forestry organizations,	A stakeholder analysis will be done for each FMU but the list here is a guide to national interested and affected stakeholders.
3. Examples of HCV4 critical ecosystem services in the country:	protection of water bodies; steep slopes, filtration of urban waste, carbon sequestration, and others depending on the FMU	More detail is provided in Annex I (vii) for CFRs
4. Geographic areas where HCV4 is likely present:	Mountain ranges in Northern Uganda; Albertine Rift, Mt Elgon Ecosystem; Lake Victoria Crescent	See Annex I (vii) for CFRs
5. Maps of HCV4 areas in the country:	Maps available in Uganda Wildlife Authority, National Forestry Authority, Wildlife Conservation Society on request	See Annex I (viii) for the map showing CFRs associated with major Rivers and Lakes
6. Threats to HCV4 areas in the country:	Poaching, encroachments, agricultural expansion, expansion of human settlements, overharvesting, corruption, poor governance, change of land use	The threats are more pronounced on land outside PAs where law enforcement is weaker
<b>STRATEGIES FOR MAINTAINING HCV4</b>	<b>National Description</b>	

<b>HCV Category</b>	<b>National Description</b>	<b>Additional SDG comments</b>
7) Strategies to protect any water catchments of importance to local communities* located within or downstream of the Management Unit*, and areas within the unit that are particularly unstable or susceptible to erosion.	Public education, law enforcement, inventories at regular intervals; collaborative forest management; research, and others depending on the FMU	The FSSD developed several community based water catchment management strategies mainly in central, northern and eastern Uganda which are very good examples
8) Examples may include protection* zones, harvest prescriptions, chemical use restrictions, and/or prescriptions for road construction and maintenance, to protect water catchments and upstream and upslope areas.	forest improvement management system for natural forests, use of chemicals limited to those approved by FSC; implementation of prescriptions in the relevant guidelines for plantation and natural forests; compliance with environmental laws	The FSSD developed several community based water catchment management strategies mainly in central, northern and eastern Uganda which are very good examples
9) Where enhancement is identified as the objective*, measures to restore* water quality and quantity are in place.	habitat restoration, including protection, collaborative forest management, encouraging natural regeneration, and other strategies depending on the FMU	The FSSD developed several community based water catchment management strategies mainly in central, northern and eastern Uganda which are very good examples
10) Where identified HCV 4 ecosystem services* include climate regulation, strategies to maintain or enhance carbon sequestration and storage are in place.		All Uganda's forests have a climate regulation role. Strategies for enhancement of carbon stock are being developed under the REDD+ programme
<b>MONITORING HCV4</b>	monitoring plans in ESIA's and FMPs, strict regulation of harvesting, Specialised studies	
<b>HCV Category</b>	<b>National Description</b>	

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
<p><b>HCV5 – Community needs. Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of local communities* or Indigenous Peoples* (for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water, etc.), identified through engagement* with these communities or Indigenous Peoples.</b></p>	<p>Forests associated with indigenous peoples: the Ik/Teuso in Mt. Timu CFR; the Tepeth in Moroto CFR; the Benets/Ndoboro in Mt Elgon National Park; the Batwa in Echuya CFR and Bwindi/Mugahinga N P; and the Batwa from Semliki NP and North Rwenzori CFR</p> <p>Each of the other forests serves community needs, the nature of the needs varying from forest to forest. Therefore the fundamental nature in each location will be determined by the forest owner in consultation with the local communities and included in the FMP.</p>	<p>The key basic needs, which areas satisfied within the context of this Standard, are considered to be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Food</li> <li>• NTFP harvesting for household income</li> <li>• Medicinal materials</li> <li>• Building materials (e.g. roof thatches, wood etc.)</li> <li>• Fuelwood</li> <li>• Tools like pestles, handles, etc.</li> <li>• Forests that host local shrines</li> </ul>
<p><b>IDENTIFICATION OF HCV5</b></p>		
<p>1. Description of Best Available Information in the country for identifying HCV5:</p>	<p>CFR profiles described in the FNCMP appendices, State of the Environment reports, study reports which are specific to this subject matter</p>	<p>All the documents can be accessed in the relevant institutions</p>
<p>2. Description of Interested and affected stakeholders:</p>	<p>The lead Natural Resource management agencies (e.g. Uganda Wildlife Authority, National Forestry Authority), Research organizations, local communities, Higher educational institutions, Ministry of Water &amp; Environment, Ministry of Trade &amp; Industry, certification bodies, private forestry organizations,</p>	<p>A stakeholder analysis will be done for each FMU but the list here is a guide to national interested and affected stakeholders.</p>



HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
3. Examples of HCV5 sites and resources fundamental for local communities in the country:	a) Cultural sites of the indigenous peoples identified above b) Fundamental resources extracted by local communities include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wild food plants</li> <li>• Medicinal plants</li> <li>• Honey and by-products</li> <li>• Gum Arabic /resins</li> <li>• Commercial products (e.g. coffee)</li> <li>• Edible oils (shea butter and palm oil)</li> <li>• Fibres and climbers (for crafts)</li> <li>• Bushmeat</li> <li>• Bark cloth</li> <li>• Bamboo</li> <li>• Rattan</li> <li>• Palms</li> <li>• Building materials (grass, poles, fibre)</li> </ul>	Details of the species that are used by local communities are given in Jenny Wong, 2003 (Annex 4) <sup>7</sup>
4. Geographic areas where HCV5 is likely present:	Throughout the country	
5. Maps of HCV5 areas in the country:	Currently there are no specific maps for resources needed by communities. Because of the diffuse nature of the resources, each FMU will prepare its own maps showing the key resources from that FMU	Normally, each FMP would identify the community use resources and lay out strategies for how the communities would access the resources
6. Threats to HCV5 areas in the country:	Habitat destabilization through encroachments, overharvesting, change of land use, agricultural expansion, expansion of human settlements, uncontrolled bush fires	Rattan is severely depleted by overharvesting in the forests where it commonly occurred (Budongo, Bugoma, Mabira); bamboo is being decimated by overharvesting in Northern Uganda and Echuya CFR in Southern Uganda; many food and medicinal plants are disappearing locally because of normal ecological succession e.g. passion fruits in

<sup>7</sup>Jenny Wong, 2003. Recommendations for the inclusion of nationally important NTFPs in standard forest inventories SC/08/2002. Report to the EDF/Uganda Forest Department: Forest Resources Management and Conservation Programme

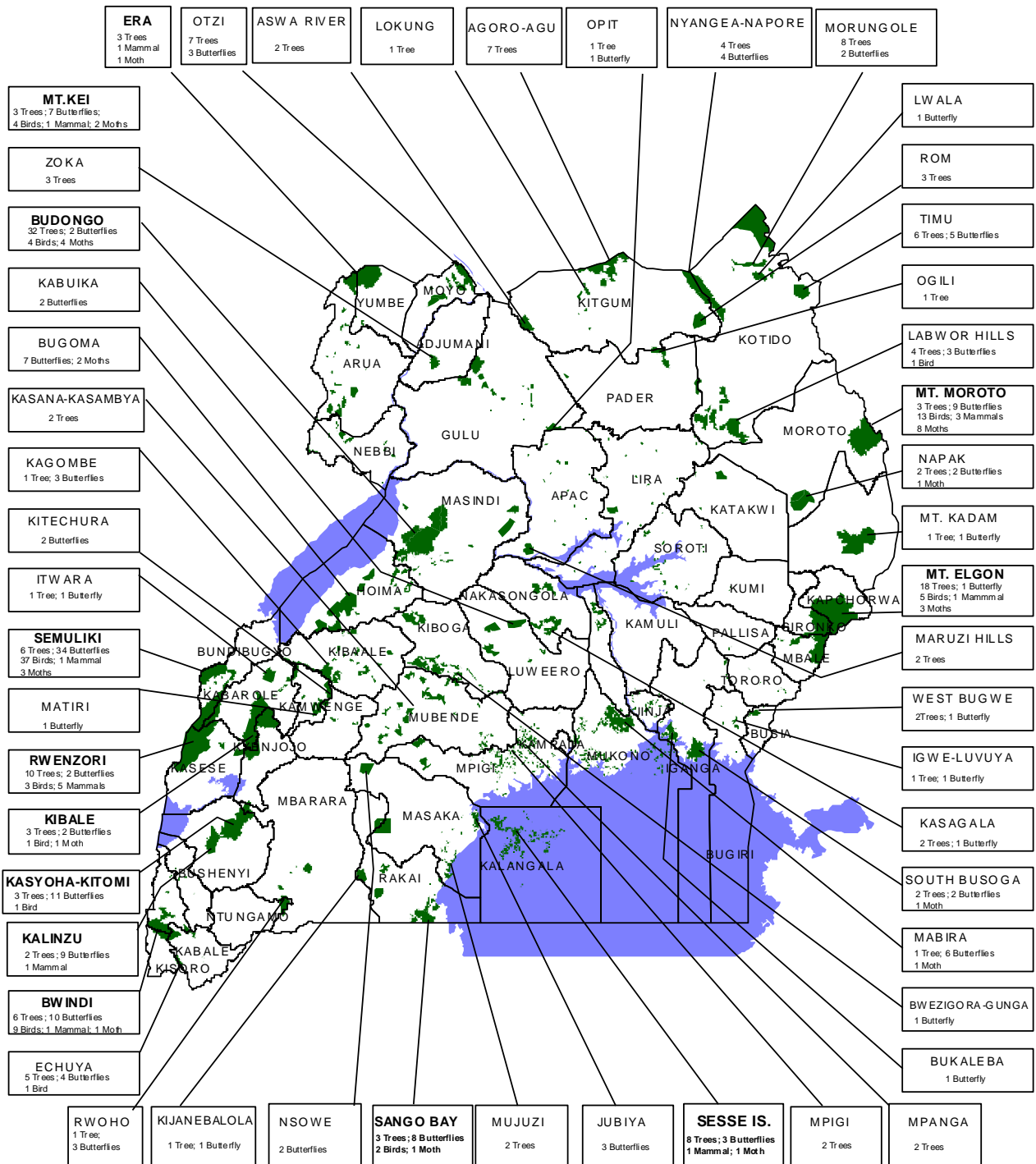
HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
		Western Uganda
<b>STRATEGIES FOR MAINTAINING HCV5</b>		
11) Strategies to protect the community's and/or Indigenous Peoples'* needs in relation to the Management Unit* are developed in cooperation with representatives and members of local communities* and Indigenous Peoples*.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Strategies that stabilize ecosystems as outlined in HCV 3</li> <li>• Domestication of the species where they are disappearing due to ecological succession</li> </ul>	The principle of FPIC will apply in the process of engaging representatives and members of local communities and Indigenous Peoples.
<b>MONITORING HCV5</b>	Baseline studies for individual species; maintenance of harvesting records; regular surveys of specific species	Jenny Wong <sup>8</sup> has given some indications on how some of the NTFPs could be surveyed
<b>HCV 6 – Cultural values. Sites, resources, habitats* and landscapes* of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of critical* cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of local communities* or Indigenous Peoples, identified through engagement* with these local communities* or Indigenous Peoples.</b>	A forest is considered HCVF if it defines the cultural identity of the local people such that its absence will lead to 'cultural erosion'.	
<b>IDENTIFICATION OF HCV 6</b>		

<sup>8</sup>op cit

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
1. Description of Best Available Information in the country for identifying HCV6:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• District Forestry Development Plans (DFDPs)</li> <li>• FMPs for individual FMUs</li> <li>• Total Economic Valuation: example Sango Bay forest</li> <li>• ESIA reports</li> <li>• Other Specialised studies and research reports</li> </ul>	<p>DFDPs have been prepared for Kitgum, Gulu, Amuru, Pader, Lango, Mayuge, and Nakasongola Districts</p> <p>More DFDPs will be prepared in due course in response to the Forestry Policy and Law</p>
2. Description of Interested and affected stakeholders:	<p>The lead Natural Resource management agencies (e.g. Uganda Wildlife Authority, National Forestry Authority), Research organizations, local communities, Higher educational institutions, Ministry of Water &amp; Environment, Ministry of Trade &amp; Industry, certification bodies, private forestry organizations, CSOs</p>	<p>A stakeholder analysis will be done for each FMU but the list here is a guide to national interested and affected stakeholders.</p>
3. Examples of HCV6 significant cultural values in the country:	<p>The cultural values that are found in many forests include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• shrines for worship of local gods/ancestors</li> <li>• burials sites</li> <li>• sites for initiation rites</li> <li>• sites for traditional sport hunting (e.g. the Lipan Community Hunting Area)</li> </ul>	<p>Examples of HCV6 sites in Uganda: Semliki, Mt. Elgon, Mt. Moroto.</p>
4. Geographic areas where HCV6 is likely present:		
5. Maps of HCV6 areas in the country:	<p>Each FMU will have its own maps showing the location of these areas, because they are diffusely distributed throughout the country.</p>	<p>HCV6 analysis will be undertaken for each FMU.</p>
6. Threats to HCV6 areas in the country:	<p>Very area specific but some threats include change of land use, agricultural expansion, expansion of human settlements, uncontrolled bush fires</p>	<p>A Threat Assessment will be done specific to each location but the generic threats are overharvesting, corruption, poor governance, Human-wildlife conflicts.</p>

HCV Category	National Description	Additional SDG comments
<b>STRATEGIES FOR MAINTAINING HCV6</b>	National Description	The FMU strategies will be developed with the engagement of the site specific interested and affected communities
	Protection, collaborative forest management; relevant conditions in harvesting/user licensing	

### Annex I (i) The Minimum Critical Set of Sites Required to Protect All Tree/Shrub Species



Numbers in each box refer to the number of species unique to that forest.  
 Forests where at least 1% of species in any taxon are unique are shown in bold.

Fig. 3.1 Map of Uganda's principal forest reserves, showing those which constitute the 'minimum critical sets of sites' required to protect all species.

Annex I (ii) List of forests selected for Nature Reserve establishment, criteria used and areas to be designated

Category	Forest	Area				Selection criteria					FR-limited	Nature Reserve	N R	NR Area	Slope >15°	NP/WR	BZ Area
		(km <sup>2</sup> )	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Vegetation Types	Suitability	%	(km <sup>2</sup> )	(km <sup>2</sup> )	Status	(km <sup>2</sup> )
PRIME	Semliki	219	+	+			+					HHH	35	100	0	219	119
	Bwindi	321	+	+			+					HH	30	100	207	321	221
	Mt Elgon	1192	+	+			+					HH	30	358	569	1192	834
	Rwenzori	996	+	+			+					HHH	35	349	818	996	647
	Kibale	558	+				+					HH	30	167	223	558	391
	Budongo	825	+	+			+					HH	30	248	27	248	335
	Otzi	188	+				+					HHH	35	100	107	0	50
	Mt Moroto	483	+	+			+	+			N9, T2 ,T3, V3	HHH	35	169	258	0	85
<b>Sub-total</b>		<b>4782</b>												<b>1591</b>	<b>2209</b>	<b>3534</b>	<b>2682</b>
CORE	Mt Kei	384		+	+		+	+			L1, L3	HH	25	96	1	0	48
	Sesse Is.	43		+	+		+	+			C1	HH	25	30	1	0	13
	Kalinzu-M	584		+	+		+					H	20	117	37	443	485

Category	Forest	Area				Selectio n criteria					FR-limited	Nature Reserve	N R	NR Area	Slope >15°	NP/W R	BZ Area
		(km <sup>2</sup> )	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Vegetation Types	Suitability	%	(km <sup>2</sup> )	(km <sup>2</sup> )	Status	(km <sup>2</sup> )
	Sango Bay	151		+	+		+	+			Y2	HH	25	50	0	0	25
	Era	74		+	+		+					HHH	30	50	14	0	25
	Kasyoha-K	390		+	+		+	+			D3	HH	25	98	162	0	65
	Labwor Hills	437			+		+	+			N4	HHH	30	131	233	0	102
	Nyangea-N	417			+		+					HHH	30	125	223	52	98
	Echuya	35			+		+					H	20	25	26	0	10
	Bugoma	401			+							HH	25	100	6	0	50
	Mabira	300			+		+	+			D1	H	20	60	6	0	30
<b>Sub-total</b>		<b>3216</b>												<b>882</b>	<b>709</b>	<b>495</b>	<b>951</b>
SECONDAR Y	Agoro-Agu	235				+	+					HHH	20	47	136	0	89
	Morongole	151				+	+					HHH	20	30	129	63	99
	Timu	118				+	+					HHH	20	24	5	0	12
	Mt Kadam	399					+	+			G2	HHH	20	80	306	0	226

Category	Forest	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	1	2	3	Selectio n criteria 4	5	6	7	8	FR-limited  Vegetation Types	Nature Reserve  Suitability	N R %	NR Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Slope >15 <sup>0</sup> (km <sup>2</sup> )	NP/W R Status	BZ Area (km <sup>2</sup> )
	Mt Napak	203					+	+			N6, Q2	HHH	20	41	103	0	62
	S. Busoga	163					+	+			D4	HHH	20	33	0	0	17
	Rom	109					+					HHH	20	22	79	0	57
	Kasagala	103					+	+			W2	HHH	20	21	0	0	10
	Rwoho	90					+					HH	15	20	51	0	31
	Itwara	86					+					HH	15	20	20	0	10
	Kijanabolola	65					+					HH	15	20	11	0	10
	Lwala	59					+					HHH	20	20	46	0	26
	Mafuga	38					+					H	10	4	35	0	0
	West Bugwe	30					+					H	10	20	0	0	10
	Igwe-Luvunya	20					+					H	10	14	1	0	6
	Mpigi gp	261					+					H	10	26	4	0	13
	Jubiya	36					+					HH	15	20	0	0	10



Category	Forest	Area				Selectio n criteria					FR-limited	Nature Reserve	N R	NR Area	Slope >15°	NP/W R	BZ Area
		(km <sup>2</sup> )	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Vegetation Types	Suitability	%	(km <sup>2</sup> )	(km <sup>2</sup> )	Status	(km <sup>2</sup> )
	Lokung	13					+					HH	15	9	0	0	4
	Zulia	1026						+			N10,N12,Q7,R 1,S1,V5	HHH	20	205		420	480
	Ogili	53						+			J2	HHH	20	20	43	0	23
	Taala	92						+			N	H	10	20	6	0	10
	Kazooba	74						+			N14	HH	15	20	4	0	10
	Maruzi	61						+				HHH	12	20	21	0	10
	Kamusene ne	62						+				HHH	8	13	0	0	9
	Kyambogo	89						+			W	HH	15	20		0	10
	Kitechura	53						+			X2	HH	15	20	10	0	10
<b>Sub-total</b>		<b>3689</b>												<b>809</b>	<b>1010</b>	<b>483</b>	<b>1254</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>		<b>1168 7</b>												<b>3282</b>	<b>3928</b>	<b>4512</b>	<b>4887</b>

Category	Forest	Area				Selectio n criteria					FR-limited	Nature Reserve	N R	NR Area	Slope >15°	NP/W R	BZ Area
		(km <sup>2</sup> )	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Vegetation Types	Suitability	%	(km <sup>2</sup> )	(km <sup>2</sup> )	Status	(km <sup>2</sup> )
Notes:	Prime sites allocated 30-35% Nature Reserve (based on NR Suitability), subject to a minimum 100 km <sup>2</sup>																
	Core sites allocated 20-30% Nature Reserve, minimum 50 km <sup>2</sup> (but not to exceed 70% of forest)																
	Secondary sites allocated 10-20% Nature Reserve, minimum 20 km <sup>2</sup> (but not to exceed 70% of forest)																
	HHH = High; HH = Medium; H = Low Nature Reserve Suitability (see Table 3.2)																
Criteria:	1: Site contributes > 2% of national PA system species complement																
	2: Within any taxon > 1% of species unique to forest																
	3: Site contributes 1-2% of national PA system complement																
	4: Within any taxon 0.5-1% of species unique to forest																
	5: Site supports at least one unique species of conservation significance (i.e. broadly endemic)																
	6: Site supports vegetation type not otherwise represented in PA system																
	7: Site contributes 0.5-1% of national PA system complement																
	8: Site contributes >1% of species under Forest Department exclusive jurisdiction																

## Annex I (iii) Ramsar Sites in Uganda

Name	Date listed	Location	Area (ha.)	Total number of species	Total Number of Wetland species	global threatened species (Ww)	Regional Red data species (Ww)
1. Lake George (LGE)	04/03/88	00°07'N 030°02'E	15,000	491	167	9	28
2. Lake Nabugabo wetland system (NBG)	11/02/04	00°24'S 031° 54'E	22,000	281	108	4	23
3. Lake Mburo-Nakivalli Wetland System (LMP)	15/09/06	00°40'S 030° 57'E	26,834	312	92	7	28
4. Lake Bisina Wetland System (BSN)	15/09/06	01°43'N 033° 54'E	54,229	162	81	4	21
5. Lake Nakuwa Wetland System (NKW)	15/09/06	01°15'N 033° 31'E	91,150	258	88	3	21
6. Lake Opeta Wetland System (OPT)	15/09/06	01°42'N 034° 14'E	68,912	174	93	3	22
7. Lutembe Bay (LTB)	15/09/06	00°10'N 032° 34'E	98	230	120	7	26
8. Mabamba Bay Wetland System (MBB)	15/09/06	00°07'N 032° 21'E	2,424	200	91	3	19
9. Murchison Falls-Albert Delta Wetland System (MFP)	15/09/06	01°57'N 031° 42'E	17,293	428	144	8	29
10. Nabajuzi Wetland System (NBJ)	15/09/06	00°46'S 031° 41'E	1,753	157	44	3	18
11. Sango Bay-Musambwa Island-Kagera Wetland System (SAMUKA) (MSB)	15/09/06	00°55'S 031° 46'E	55,110	372	105	3	19
12. Rwenzori Mountain National Park (RNP)	23/108	0°25' - 0°50' N, 29°80' - 30°09' E.	224	177	-	-	-

Annex I (iv) Location of Important Bird Areas in Uganda

Map and location of IBAs in Uganda

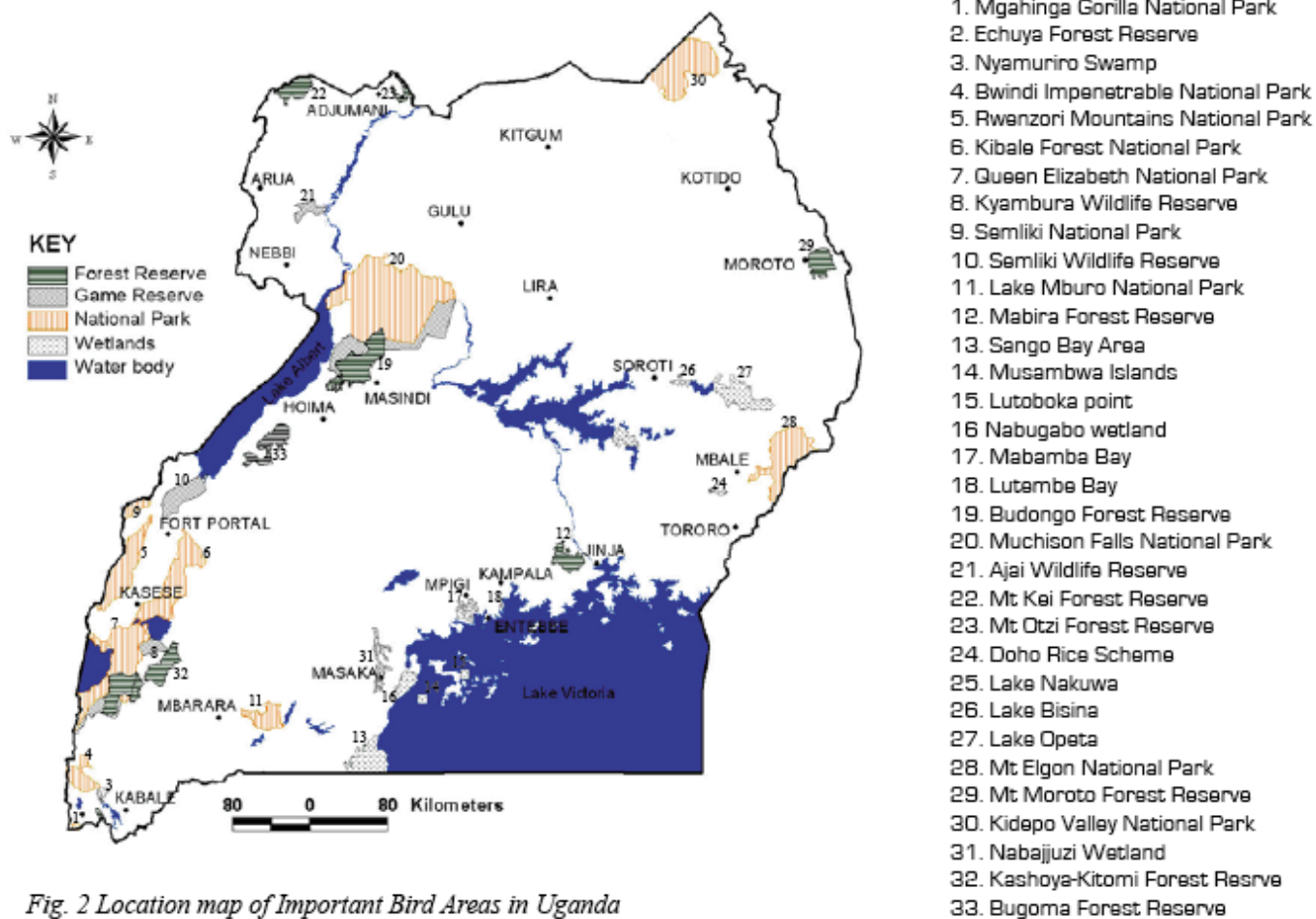


Fig. 2 Location map of Important Bird Areas in Uganda



**Annex I (vi): Intact Forest Landscapes in Uganda**

<b>Category (in terms of conservation value)</b>	<b>Forest</b>	<b>Total Area (ha)</b>	<b>NR Area (ha)</b>	<b>BZ Area (ha)</b>	<b>Total NR+BZ (ha)</b>
Prime	Semliki	21,900	10,000	11,900	21,900
Prime	Bwindi	32,100	10,000	22,100	32,100
Prime	Mt Elgon	119,200	35,800	83,400	119,200
Prime	Rwenzori	99,600	34,900	64,700	99,600
Prime	Kibale	55,800	16,700	39,100	55,800
Prime	Budongo	82,500	24,800	33,500	58,300
Prime	Otzi	18,800	10,000	5,000	15,000
Prime	Mt Moroto	48,300	16,900	8,500	25,400
<b>Total</b>					<b>427,300</b>
Core	Mt Kei	38,400	9,600	4,800	14,400
Core	Kalinzu-M	58,400	11,700	48,500	60,200
Core	Kasyoha-K	39,000	9,800	6,500	16,300
Core	Labwor Hills	43,700	13,100	10,200	23,300
Core	Nyangea-N	41,700	12,500	9,800	22,300
Core	Bugoma	40,100	10,000	5,000	15,000
<b>Total</b>					<b>151,500</b>
Secondary	Agoro-Agu	23,500	4,700	8,900	13,600
Secondary	Morongole	15,100	3,000	9,900	12,900
Secondary	Mt Kadam	39,900	8,000	22,600	30,600
Secondary	Zulia	102,600	20,500	48,000	68,500
Secondary	Mt Napak	20,300	4,100	6,200	10,300
<b>Total</b>					<b>135,900</b>

**Annex (vii) Central Forest Reserves Associated with Ecological Functions**

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
1	West Nile	Nebbi	Abiba	2,007	Eco	Protects the steep slopes of the Agem, Akuru, Ayugi and Afoda range of hills and the catchment area for some important rivers like Moro and Aumbali which are sources of water for animals and domestic use for the communities in Kaliwangi parish. It was also intended to provide forest products for the local people. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of industrial timber and bio-energy to generate economic returns.
2	Achwa	Apac	Aboke	13	Eco	A green belt for Aboke Township, stabilizing the township environment and contains the only stock of Mvule remaining within the area.
3	Achwa	Dokolo	Abuje	251	Eco	The CFR protects Awalu Swamp which is a source of water for the surrounding communities both for livestock and domestic use. the grassland areas will be available for investment in commercial production of trees for timber & bio-energy
4	Achwa	Oyam	Acet	256	Eco	Located in the flat and dry Acaba Subcounty. Established with eucalyptus to supply tobacco growers. North eastern part is rocky and slops into a valley
5	Achwa	Kitgum	Achwa River	8,459	Eco	Protection of Acwa River bank which feeds into the Nile and provide building materials and bioenergy to the people in Ogili Subcounty
6	Achwa	Lira	Acwao	264	Eco	Protects the banks of Acwao River that flows along the CFR and pours its waters in Moroto River serving communities in Adwari Subcounty. It is also planned for production of industrial plantations by the private sector

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
7	Achwa	Dokolo	Adero	249	Eco	The CFR protects Adero a central watering point for livestock and people in the surrounding areas. It is fed by Amirijong and Amiringoko Swamps. in addition to its role as a water catchment area, the reserve is being managed for providing commercial forest products for people living around the reserve.
8	Achwa	Apac	Aduku North & South	29	Eco	A green belt to Aduku Township, with potential to develop recreational facilities for the town
9	Achwa	Kitgum	Agoro-Agu	26,508	Eco	A hill reserve that is among the CFRs that constitute the network of critical sites of biodiversity in Uganda; it's the origin of Aringa River, a source of water for Agoro Subcounty
10	Achwa	Abim	Akur	6,434	Eco	Among the network of critical sites of biodiversity conservation in Uganda. A hill reserve, with River Ojulu originating from it, serving Atunga & Wiawer parishes and Ating village.
11	Achwa	Abim	Alerek	7,433	Eco	Among the network of critical sites of biodiversity conservation in Uganda. A hill reserve, bordering Abim and Kotido Districts protecting the banks of River Angorom.
12	Achwa	Dokolo	Alit	189	Eco	It a source of water for two protected springs (located inside the reserve), which serve four villages in Anenalibi Parish, Kwera Subcounty. The reserve also protects a swamp which feeds into Lake Kwania.
13	West Nile	Nebbi	Alui	575	Eco	A riverine forest gazzetted to protect the wetlands that are part of the drainage system which empties into the Albert Nile. It was also intended to provide forest products for the local people. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of industrial timber and bio-energy to generate economic returns



No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
14	Kyoga	Amuria	Alungamosi-Mosi	4,646	Eco	The FR is a watershed for L. Kyoga. Modification of Teso region climate. Supply of poles, firewood, and timber. Acts as a green belt and /or wind break. Kapelonbogo sub county Headquarters to the East.
15	Achwa	Apac	Aminkec	256	Eco	The reserve is a catchment for Aminkec River and swamp used by communities in Aminkec A & B in Apac sub county.
16	Achwa	Gulu	Amuka	1,101	Eco	It is a catchment area for Abera stream serving the communities of Gwengdiya, Burcoro, Laciri, Obyela, Latwong and Otumpili. It is a woodland reserve with good soil and climatic conditions for future industrial timber plantation establishment
17	Achwa	Oyam	Aneneng	264	Eco	It protects the watershed of Ayugi River that drains into Ogweyo Agulu Wetland an which three parishes of Adel, Oyuru & Atek depend for water
18	Kyoga	Kabera mai do	Angutewere	280	Eco	Is a watershed for L. Kyoga. Modification of the climate of Kabera maido and its surrounding. Supply of firewood for domestic use. Habitat for wildlife.
19	Kyoga	Kabera mai do	Anyara	171	Eco	Climatic modification for Kabera maido region. Catchment for L. Kyoga; supply of fuelwood for domestic use.
20	Achwa	Kitgum	Aringa River	44	Eco	It protects the banks of Aringa River and it is also a water catchment area for streams that serve people in Potika and Paloga Subcounties. Today, the FR is still managed for the same ecological purposes but the lower slopes can be planted with bioenergy plantations

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
21	West Nile	Arua	Arua	236	Eco	The CFR protects the banks of streams that originate from it and the wetlands associated with these rivers and streams. The major streams include Asa, Origama, Adumini, Adroyi, and Mindreyi. Today the main management objectives remain environmental, to protect the water sources and clean the air in the fast-growing Arua Town the surroundings. However, a process has been initiated to exchange the land which has been built illegally with other land to be provided by the Urban Authorities. Unfortunately, the wetlands along rivers are being cultivated illegally.
22	Achwa	Abim	Ating	1,318	Eco	Among the network of critical sites of biodiversity conservation in Uganda. The CFR is known for the very nice bamboo poles for building
23	West Nile	Moyo	Atiya	194	Eco	This forest, together with the Otze East CFR, constitutes a biodiversity connectivity between the critical biodiversity sites of Era and Otze CFRs. NFA has established a timber plantation demonstration site in the CFR.
24	West Nile	Arua	Ave	777	Eco	Protects the range of hills including Yeci, Ewanguru, Aku, Ave hills. A number of streams like Gbolova, Kawe, and tributaries that flow into River Ala originate from these hills, supplying water to the surrounding communities. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of industrial timber and bio-energy to generate economic returns
25	Achwa	Dokolo	Awer	220	Eco	It is adjacent to Alit CFR and serves the same purposes. It a source of water for two protected springs which serve four villages in Anenalibi Parish, Kwera Subcounty. The reserve also protects a swamp which feeds into Lake Kwania.
26	Achwa	Lira	Ayami	329	Eco	Ater River flows through the reserve, and is the only source of water communities of Ogur Sub county, especially those depending on Ayami Dam.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						It will also be used to establish industrial plantations
27	Achwa	Apac	Ayer (1959 Eucalyptus)	3	Eco	Protection of the permanent wetland called Okole
28	Achwa	Apac	Ayer Euc & Ayer Bala Road	8	Eco	Protection of the permanent wetland called Okole
29	West Nile	Moyo	Ayipe	894	Eco	This forest, together with the Otze East CFR, constitutes a biodiversity connectivity between the critical biodiversity sites of Era and Otze CFRs. It is also a source of water for the Metu and Goopii Community and their livestock.
30	Achwa	Lira	Ayito	231	Eco	River Aliwango flows through the reserve, and it is the only source of water to communities in Adwari Subcounty.
31	Lakeshore	Kayunga	Bajo	3,373	Eco	R. Ssezibwa and R. Nile catchment and close to L. Kyoga. Industrial private planting.
32	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Banga	184	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria.
33	Lakeshore	Rakai	Bikira	28	Eco	Bikira FR lies adjacent and acts as catchment for the Kyotera wetland which is the only source of water for the whole of Kyotera Town Council.
34	Lakeshore	Mukono	Bira	313	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
35	Achwa	Gulu	Bobbi	5	Eco	It is a water catchment for River Tochii and other small streams.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
36	Budongo	Masindi	Budongo	82,530	Eco	The forest is part of the network of critical sites for biodiversity conservation in Uganda. It constitutes part of the catchment area for Rivers Bubwa, Sonso and Waisoke which flow gently over the escarpment to Lake Albert. Other rivers in this catchment include Siiba & Waki which join together and feed into Lake Albert. River Waki has a high potential for electricity generation at the falls as it rolls over the Western rift valley escarpments near Lake Albert. The rivers and other water points located in the reserve are used for domestic use by the local populations in the subcounties of Budongo, Kigorobya, Biiso, Karujubu, Pakanyi and Bulisa. The forest also has high valued trees like <i>Cynometra alexandri</i> which can be used for industrial timber (for making railway slippers, plat form for bridges) and high calorific industrial charcoal. It is a source of high valuable mahogany trees which are known for high quality furniture. The forest is home of some globally threatened wildlife like chimpanzee and other animal and plant life and as such its highly attractive for research and education.
37	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Bufumira	347	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria.
38	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Buga	301	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria.
39	Kyoga	Namutumba	Bugaali	117	Eco	The reserve protects River Mpologoma from silting as it flows to join Lake Kyoga. The river is the main source of water for domestic use and economic activities to the surrounding local communities. Currently heavily encroached by cultivators and some settlement and the Mvule have largely been destroyed. The CFR was fully stocked by <i>Milicia excelsa</i> (Mvule) and conserved as source of Mvule tree seeds. However, this was depleted illegally.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
40	Lake shore	Kalangala	Bugana	148	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria.
41	Kyoga	Bugiri	Bugiri	16	Eco	Reserve is the source of two streams that supply Bugiri town council and surrounding villages of Ndeba, Naluwerere, and Nalufakunya. Reserve protects the wetland in Bugiri town council that later filters the drinking water in Bugiri town council.
42	Budongo	Hoima	Bugoma	41,144	Eco	It protects the banks of Rivers Nguse, Ngemwa, Lyalo, Rwemiseke and Rutowa which eventually drain into Lake Albert. It acts as a biodiversity corridor by connecting Kabwoya Game Reserve to MFNP, Budongo, Rwengeye, Matiri, Itwara CFR and Semiliki NP. It is a watershed for River Nguse and Rutowa which eventually feed Lake Albert. Rivers Nguse and Rutowa serve as a water source to the communities of Kabwoya, Kyangwali, Buseruka, Lugasari and Kyalyanga Sub-counties. It is a natural forest with high potential for producing high value timber like <i>Khaya anthotheca</i> , <i>Melicia excelsa</i> , <i>Anigeria alitima</i> etc. It has immense potential for ecotourism. It is one of the CFRs that constitute the network of critical biodiversity sites in Uganda. Prized species include Chimpanzees, Elephants, Antelopes, and a variety of birds and butterflies. It is a centre for professional research and education with numerous studies being carried out.
43	Lakeshore	Mukono	Bugomba	272	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
44	Kyoga	Soroti	Bugondo Hills	1,033	Eco	FR is located about 200m from L.Kyoga which is the main source of water and fish (income) for the community of Bugondo Sub-county.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
45	Lakeshore	Mukono	Bugusa	243	Eco	Located in Buvuma Islands, it is one of the reserves protecting Lake Victoria
46	Muzizi	Kyenjojo	Buhungiro	1,020	Eco	Local communities of Kazizi, Nyanga, Iringa, Igunda, Katamba, in Mpara and Kakabara sub counties draw water from Buhungiro CFR. The streams include Kataira, Rwangarwe, Rwangomi, Kahombo. The hills include Duyungu, Nyanga, Ngangi, Katamba, Kasunga, Kabasasa, Kyaiserunboha. Private tree farmers have been licensed to plant trees
47	Budongo	Hoima	Bujawe	4,869	Eco	It protects Rivers Hoimo and Rwamutunga which are a source of water to the people and animals in Buseruka and Bugambe sub-counties. The rivers eventually feed into Lake Albert. It is part of the biodiversity corridor connecting MFNP, Budongo, Bugoma and Kabwoya Wildlife Reserve. The reserve has a high potential for the production of industrial timber through private tree investment (so far 700ha have already been planted by private tree investors such as BAT, Corewoods and others. It is a source of employment to the local people.
48	Lakeshore	Mukono	Bukaibale	1,137	Eco	An Island reserve in Buvuma Island that that offers protection to Lake Victoria.
49	Lakeshore	Masaka	Bukakata	16	Eco	Bukakata FR lies at the edge of L. Victoria which is an all- important lake for supply of water and fish to large populations in E. Africa. It provides a water catchment for the lake.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
50	Kyoga	Mayuge	Bukaleba	9,663	Eco	Shares a boundary with the lake, and therefore one of the lakeshore forest reserves, protecting Lake Victoria from siltation. It is also the origin and water catchment for River Mwangwe and River Nanikore that are permanent and serve local communities of Luwerere, Kasali and Bukaleba villages, Manyiro subcounty in Mayuge district, with domestic water and water for their economic activities. These rivers flow into L.Victoria and contribute to filling of the lake with water. One of the CFR,s several peninsulas provides protection/conservation of some remnants of wild life e.g. buffaloes, wild pigs, antelopes and various bird species that live in the natural forest occupying the peninsular- the only site in Busoga region where such games still exist and presents potential for ecotourism development. The forest also provides protection to lagoons which are fish breeding places within the lake. Two private foreign companies have established commercial plantations (2,151ha already planted) in the formerly encroached portions of the reserve. Like most CFRs in Busoga region, Bukaleba also protects two hills located within the reserve from soil erosion. However, encroachment in form of illegal grazing, settlements and cultivation persist in the CFR, especially in some parts of the peninsula and areas allocated to the private companies for tree planting.
51	Kyoga	Bukedea	Bukedea	16	Eco	Serves as a water catchment for Bukedea swamp which is mainly used for watering livestock. Also, serves as a catchment for a long spring that runs close to the CFR.
52	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Bukone	139	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria.
53	Lakeshore	Mukono	Bulijjo	105	Eco	A riverine forest, which together with Kifu & Kyampisi CFRs protect local river

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
	re					systems
54	Lakeshore	Mukono	Buloba	269	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
55	Muzizi	Mityana	Bulondo	453	Eco	It borders L. Wamala therefore good for water protection. It has good NTFP for income generation and domestic use whereby most herbalists in town get them from Bulondo.
56	Lakeshore	Mukono	Buluku	300	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
57	Kyoga	Kaberaimado	Bululu Hills	425	Eco	Protects lake Kyoga and its slopes are swamps or/wetlands for fish breeding.
58	Muzizi	Mubende	Bumude - Nchwanga	329	Eco	Protects the rocky hill slopes of Bumude and Nchwanga within the area, but currently it faces threats from encroachers.
59	Muzizi	Bundibugyo	Bundikeki	396	Eco	Located in the foot hills of Mt. Ruwenzori, the CFR serves a soil stabilization function, protecting the area from landslides.
60	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Bunjanzi	80	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria.
61	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Busowe	1,716	Eco	Island forest and protects the L.Victoria from siltation. Catchment for R. Kigerekyanvubu that flows into Busowe swamp and into L.Victoria. The area of lagoon where a delicious spp of fish known locally as 'masiinya' breed.
62	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Buturume	181	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria.



No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
	re					
63	Lakeshore	Mukono	Buuka	308	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
64	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Buvuma	1,096	Eco	This reserve along the edge of Mayanja swamp through which river Mayanja flows on its way to join River Katonga and later into L.Victoria. It is also a water source for Muduma and Bujuko trading centers.
65	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Buwa	352	Eco	Wetland and the natural forest belt protects a protected well for supply of domestic water.
66	Lakeshore	Mukono	Buwanzi	458	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
67	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Buziga	98	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria.
68	Muzizi	Kiboga	Bwezigolo-Gunga	5,263	Eco	This reserve has 4 rivers originating from hills namely Kitama, Kiseza, Namuhuguru and Kayirira. These rivers are a source of water to the community in Lwamata subcounty mainly villages of Kitama, Kusejere, Gunga and provides the water that is used in Lwamata trading center as piped. It also provides a good catchment area for all the above rivers running towards Kitumbi river. This reserve was also gazetted for steep hills and soil protection because this area has steep hills and the natural forest in the valley protects the soil. The reserve currently is highly encroached. 80% of it has been licensed to private planters. Economically, the reserve provides timber which is mainly sold to licensed pitsawyers. It also provides charcoal which is used Kiboga because of its Comberetum species.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
69	Kyoga	Soroti	Dakabela	199	Eco	Catchment for lake Kyoga. Climatic modification for Teso region in general. Habitat for wildlife. Supply of firewood and water to Arapai sub-county.
70	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Degeya	249	Eco	Lies within Nawandigi wetland system and protects two main streams pouring into L.Victoria, three protected wells supplying four villages with water for domestic use, over 99% of local communities get bio-energy and building poles from the reserve.
71	West Nile	Nebbi	East Uru	477	Eco	Protects the steep slopes of Uru Hill and is also a catchment for streams which eventually feed into River Nyagak. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of forest products like honey and services like scenic drives and mountain hiking to generate economic returns.
72	South West	Kabale	Echuya	3,403	Eco	CFR is the only FR that supports highland bamboo. CFR supports 5 species of trees, 4 of butterflies and 1 of birds that do not occur any where in Uganda. CFR supports 8 species of birds, 7 of butterflies and 1 of trees that are endemic. CFR supports globally endangered Graver's Rush Wabler which is an Albertine Rift Endemic bird. CFR acts as a watershed for lake Buyonyi. Echuya swamp is a reservoir that drains into the mouth and supplies villages of Kanaba with domestic water. Indegenous communities (the Batwa) depend on the CFR for their livelihood.
73	West Nile	Moyo	Era	7,389	Eco	The CFR is part of the network of critical sites for biodiversity conservation in Uganda. It is home to the primitive cycad spp, and some rare species of butterfly. It is also a catchment area for Odraji, Lama, and Lukuji streams which feed into River Nile

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
74	Muzizi	Kabarole	Fort Portal	65	Eco	Protects the wetlands associated with river Mpanga that meander through the town. An urban CFR important for cleaning the environment and is being developed into a recreation green
75	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Funve	181	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria.
76	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Gala	894	Eco	Island forest and protects the L.Victoria from siltation.Catchment for R.Gala that flows into L.Victoria and provides fresh water to the local communities of the area. Provides a breeding place for 'masiinya' fish, a delicacy in the area.
77	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Gangu	1,054	Eco	Picnic site, protects 3 streams, has 4 protected wells serving water for the locals, impacts on the local climate quite significantly;the surrounding areas are where you can get fresh beans all year around and supply of gingers is endemic to this place.
78	Achwa	Amuru	Got-Gweno	2,310	Eco	It is a water catchment forest for Achwa, Kwii and Amuka rivers supying 8 villages in the sub county. It is intended for industrial timber producton
79	Achwa	Gulu	Gulu	98	Eco	The CFR provides a green belt that cleans the urban environment. It also protects the banks of the river that flows through it.
80	Budongo	Kibaale	Guramwa	1,546	Eco	The forest was meant to protect Nkondo Stream but it is highly encroached and the encroached part is intended to be restored and the existing forested patches in the valleys and along Nkondo stream are conserved.
81	Muzizi	Kyenjojo	Ibambaro	3,724	Eco	Rivers include kahombo and burunga all serve the communities of kyangalama. hills include nyabatoro and babaija

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
82	South West	Rukungiri	Ihimbo	566	Eco	It is the only CFR with hot springs in South-West Range which has medicinal properties and has potential for ecotourism. It is a water catchment for rivers Ntungwa and Kachindo that drain into Lake Edward. Plantation in Ihimbo supply poles and fuel wood to the tobacco industry and surrounding communities. CFR is the only source of water for the parishes of Kikongi, Murama. The wetland forest in Ihimbo traps sediments in rivers and thus helps purify the water
83	Achwa	Apac	Ilera	158	Eco	A catchment for River Agege that regulates underground water levels for springs in Amuca near SDA and Apii. It protects Apii Wetland
84	Muzizi	Kyenjojo	Itwara	8,638	Eco	A natural forest protecting a number of rivers and streams that supply water to the surrounding population. One of the prominent rivers is Muzizi. It is a source of industrial furniture grade timber.
85	West Nile	Arua	Iyi	2,437	Eco	A hill reserve that protects the watershed for Rivers Ora and Anikuru which pour into River Nile. These rivers are very important sources of water for livestock and domestic use by the local communities in Offaka and Logiri Subcounties. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of industrial timber plantations and transmission poles by private investors.
86	Lakeshore	Mukono	Izinga Island	104	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
87	Kyoga	Iganga	Iziru	616	Eco	Resulting from encroachment of this woodland CFR by cultivators during 1970s, the non-hilly parts of the CFR have been zoned to protect the Iziru hills/range. This low ground has been 100% planted with pines and eucalyptus by private tree farmers. This is contributing to the protection of soil, Iziru

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						hills, climate amelioration besides provision of poles and income from sale of eucalytus poles to the local private tree farmers.
88	Lakeshore	Masaka	Jubiya	4,571	Eco	Jubiya is a water catchment forest with various streams passing through it. It entirely lies along the shores of L. Victoria.providing a cathment for the lake and the various streams on which the population depends for water for domestic and production purposes.
89	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Jumbi	342	Eco	Has 2 small streams and pours into Musoma swamp. It is source of water for six adjucent villages.
90	South West	Kabale	Kabale	129	Eco	Forest is a catchment area for river Rwabakazi. Cleans the air and stabilises the environment in Kabale town. FR supplies fuel wood to Kabale town and poles for construction industry. Forest contributes to poverty alleviation by providing employment to local communities in management activities contracts.
91	Muzizi	Kiboga	Kabindo	1,474	Eco	The reserve was purposely gazetted for watershed and wetland prediction because of the river that originates in the reserve known as Kyekubya. This river is source of water for anumber of cattle and the villages sorrounding the reserve. It currently has a research plot planted by Mvule and Mukaria spp. The rest of the reserve has been licensed to private planters especially the hills.
92	Muzizi	Mityana	Kabukira	342	Eco	A valley forest protecting river Kabukira and a source of water to the sorrounding communities

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
93	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Kabulego	168	Eco	Protects water source which serves the local communities with safe water, NFA plantation to meet the increasing demand of forest products.
94	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Kabuye	153	Eco	Protects wetland and River Kabira which lies within it. Only source of domestic water supply for the population of neighbouring villages. A source of handcraft materials for locals to earn living.
95	Kyoga	Kaberaimado	Kachogogwe	404	Eco	The reserve is a catchment and protects L. Kyoga. Supply poles and firewood for the fishing communities around L.Kyoga
96	Kyoga	Nakapiripirit	Kadam	39,917	Eco	Kadam CFR is a watershed/catchment for Rivers Chosen and Namalu on which communities in Nakapiripirit town and Namalu areas depend on for their economic livelihoods and domestic use. Chosen and Namalu rivers also supply water to Kumi, Ngora and Bukedea areas. The CFR protects the fragile rocks of schists and gneisses that make Mt. Kadam on which it is located. Mt. Kadam is the source of relief rainfall in the area and explains the high agricultural productivity in and around Namalu Prisons Farm. Another important revelation is that Kadam CFR ranks 10th in overall Biodiversity importance among the 65 CFRs. It is the 12th in terms of species diversity and 24th in terms of species "rarity" value. It supports two species (a tree and a butterfly) found in no other Ugandan forest. It is also the only reserve with a riparian thicket (G2) which, although covers a small area of the reserve (4km <sup>2</sup> ), is not found in any of the country's National Parks and wildlife reserves.
97	West Nile	Koboko	Kadre	785	Eco	The CFR is source of River Keira which serves the people in Midia, Lobule, Yivu and Tara Subcounties. The existing natural woodland protects the surrounding areas which are now deforested due to collection of firewood for tobacco curing

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
98	Budongo	Masindi	Kaduku	583	Eco	This is one of the reserves dedicated to industrial timber production through private sector investment
99	West Nile	Arua	Kafu	2,600	Eco	The reserve protects the steep slopes of Kafu hill from soil degradation. It also protects the water catchment for Rivers Agoi, Nyara, Ewivio and Anjea which are the only permanent water sources for animals and domestic uses for communities adjacent to the reserve i.e Madua, Olaka, Lazebu villages. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of industrial timber and bio-energy to generate economic returns for the local people
100	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kafumbi	365	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
101	Budongo	Kibaale	Kagadi	8	Eco	An urban CFR important for cleaning the environment and can be developed into a recreation green
102	Budongo	Kibaale	Kagombe	17,751	Eco	Protects the watershed for Rivers Kagombe & Muzizi which eventually drain into Lake Albert. It connects to Semliki National Park via Muhangi, Kitechura, Ibambaro, Matiri and Itwara CFRs. The CFR is seriously encroached, which is a threat to the ecological functions of the reserve. It is a young forest with a high potential for producing high value timber from natural forest e.g mahogany.
103	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Kagongo	127	Eco	The only source of water for six villages. Adjacent to it is a seasonal stream but the only source of water for domestic use are from wells within the CFR.
104	Kyoga	Soroti	Kagwara	370	Eco	Catchment for L. Kyoga, partly serving Kagwara parish, Kadungulu sub-county.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
105	Lakeshore	Rakai	Kaiso	2,023	Eco	Kaiso is one of the blocks of Sango Bay that is rich in biodiversity and protects the diverse wetland ecosystem characteristic of the entire Sango Bay area. Grasslands are for timber production to protect the biodiversity continuous with the Minziro forest in Tanzania.
106	Muzizi	Mityana	Kajonde	342	Eco	It has a river which flows in it keeping the climate cool and has enabled the community around to construct walls in the reserve plus a bore hole for the government which serves them with water. Has a good stand but there is illegal sand mining and harvesting plus selling of small logs to Kampala.
107	South West	Kamwege	Kakasi	800	Eco	FR is a catchment area for river Katigule. Katigule with other swamps provide the water for communities around for domestic use in villages of Kaywambogo, Katigule. The area has very steep slopes in the region which are protected by the forest and believed to be rich in minerals and if degraded shall lead to massive soil erosion, loss of biodiversity, floods and siltation of L. George. The reserve is the only area with a woodland in the region keeping a number of species of birds, animals, insects and butterflies. The part of reserve provides wood materials for domestic use ranging from fuelwood, walking sticks, pegs, poles. Part being a woodland, it is the main source of herbs that are medicine to the communities around the reserve. The reserve has provided employment for people from the local communities.
108	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kakonwa	743	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
109	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kalagala Falls	96	Eco	River bank protection of river Nile bank. Current management is ecotourism investment (ADRIFT). Buganda Kingdom cultural heritage. Industrial tree planting. Source of water for domestic use for Kalagala village in Kangu Lumira



No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						sub-county.
110	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Kalandazi (Busiro)	458	Eco	The reserve is along streams and swamps that empties into Lake Victoria. Supply most of the local bio-energy demands, poles and protects all the water sources for local demand.
111	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Kalandazi (Mawokota)	137	Eco	Kalandazi river drains from this reserve into L.Victoria. It also forms the lake shorelines in Ssisa sub-county.
112	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Kalangalo	337	Eco	It forms the shoreline of L.Victoria in Kasanje sub-county. All the lakes sand used for building in Kampala comes from this reserve under license.
113	South West	Bushenyi	Kalinzu	14,126	Eco	Protects the steep hills, a catchment for several rivers and rich in biodiversity. Ecotourism is ongoing and there is potential for expansion given the high number of chimps and other tourist attractions. It also provides market for local handicrafts and food items. Conservation education for the adjacent local communities and school children is provided by Kalinzu CFR. The forest is a seed source of various indigenous species.
114	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Kalombi	3,836	Eco	Source of water for all the neighbouring villages for both animals and human beings. Large portion for private and NFA plantation. Protects hill tops and neighbouring wetlands
115	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Kamera	130	Eco	Island forest protecting L.Victoria.
116	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Kampala	139	Eco	Island forest protecting L.Victoria.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
117	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Kamukulu	5	Eco	Island forest protecting L.Victoria.
118	Muzizi	Mubende	Kanangalo	2,642	Eco	Catchment for Muzizi River through Kanangalo River. The valleys are closed forest with a diverse species of wild animals including elephants & leopards.
119	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Kanjaza	332	Eco	Kanjaza river drains from this reserve into L.Victoria. It also forms the lake shorelines in Kasanje sub-county. Planes preparing to land at Entebbe airport descend from this area.
120	Achwa	Abim	Kano	8,293	Eco	Among the network of critical sites of biodiversity conservation in Uganda. It is a hill reserve ,protects small river at amal and serves communities in abim and kano parishes
121	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kasala	298	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation. Catchment for Kasala river that drains into River Sseibwa on its way to L.Kyoga. River Kasala and its tributaries are the sources of domestic water for the local communities of Kasala parish.
122	Budongo	Kibaale	Kasato	2,691	Eco	The forest acts as a water catchment area for Ruzaire River which eventually drains into Nkuse and Muzizi Rivers
123	Muzizi	Kiboga	Kasega	109	Eco	The purpose of gazettement Kasega FR was watershed protection, soil protection and steep hill protection. This reserve protects Kyekubya river that originates from Kabindo CFR and runs through Kasega. This river is a source of water for both domestic and for the animals around. Currently the Reserve is licensed to private tree farmers.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
124	Muzizi	Mubende	Kasenya	203	Eco	Serves to clean the town environment and provides recreation for the townsfolk. It is a catchment for all the run off from the down on the north eastern side. This run off feeds Katabalonga river and is used by Kyabogo, Katwe villages.
125	Budongo	Masindi	Kasokwa	73	Eco	The CFR protects the banks of River Kasokwa which is the main water source for Kinyala Sugar Works LTD and the surrounding local communities of Kabango & Kibwona Parishes. The forest is a habitat to chimpanzees and other animals which are now completely cut off from Budongo CFR as a result of destruction of the riverine forest along Kasokwa River that used to connect Kasokwa and Budongo CFRs. The reserve is currently under pressure by cultivators, illegal grazing and removal of wood products for timber, fuelwood and poles.
126	Lakeshore	Masaka	Kasonke	117	Eco	Kasonke is traversed by the Kasonke stream which pours directly into L. Victoria. The reserve provides a catchment for both the stream and lake which are depended upon by people of Bulayi and sanji villages both for domestic and production. It's the only source of water for Kako Secondary school.
127	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Kasozi	44	Eco	A riverine reserve protecting the wetlands and tributaries of River Nawandigi which feeds into Lake Victoria.
128	South West	Bushenyi	Kasyoha-Kitomi	39,464	Eco	A watershed and catchment for rivers such as Kyambura, Buhindagi, Ngoro, Katerera, Kitomi, among others. These rivers drain into Lake George ecosystem. The steep hills of Munyonyi, Muragara, Kategule, Kampuma, Rubare, Nyakakoma acts as the major watershed areas for the areas of Bunyaruguru, Irimba, Burere, and Runengo in Buhwezu. These rivers also provide domestic water to communities around the reserve in the parishes of Nwongera, Katanda, Kazumbura, Kitake, Mujera, Katala, Kyambura. Besides

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						R.Kyambura had been identified an potential for hydroelectric power. A sanctuary to wildlife during dry seasons. Exceptionally diverse in its flora and fauna and therefore of high conservation value in the country and the region as a whole. It is also a core conservation forest in the forest nature conservation master plan 2002. Some grassland areas have been licensed to private tree farmers to support their livelihoods. Has potential for ecotourism due to the scenic beauty of Kamuzuku lakes and other features like transparent lakes.
129	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Katabalalu	1,253	Eco	Katabalalu River flows from this reserve into Katonga river and then to L.Victoria
130	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Kavunda	140	Eco	Wetland and private plantations to bridge the sawlog supply deficit
131	Muzizi	Mubende	Kaweri	1,235	Eco	Protects streams and wetlands (Kaweeri Sawmps) that originate from the reserve and feed into River Muzizi. An urban CFR important for cleaning the environment and can be developed into a recreation green
132	Achwa	Amuro	Keyo	759	Eco	Catchment of River Tochi, Ayugi Tochipacala, Awer, Keyo and Oyitino that serves both Gulu and Amuro District. Villages around the reserve i.e Awer, Keyo, Wiyanono and Pagak obtain their water from these rivers. The hill tops are mainly for conserving the indigeneous tree species.
133	Muzizi	Kyenjojo	Kibego	1,269	Eco	A natural forest that protects the banks of tributaries that feed into River Muzizi. It is also an important forest in biodiversity corridor along river Muzizi

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
134	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kifu	1,419	Eco	Catchment for R. Kifu tributary to R.Ssezibwa in Mukono. National Forest Research Institute(NAFORRI). Demonstration trials for industrial and aromatic oils. Seed stand for fast growing trees. Industrial plantations.
135	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kifunve	197	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
136	Lakeshore	Rakai	Kigona	246	Eco	Kigona lies along L. Victoria and acts as shield to the lake as well as wind break shielding the people who live at Malembo village.
137	Lakeshore	Rakai	Kigona River	904	Eco	A riverline forest lying along the Kigona river which is a direct source of water that pours into L. victoria. Kigona River is a source of water for the cultivating and grazing communities around Zirizi, Sserinya, Nkalwe and other parts of Kabira Sub county. They are engaged in commercial passion fruit production.
138	Budongo	Kibaale	Kihaimira	572	Eco	It's a young forest with a high potential of future valuable timber tree species for industrial use
139	Lakeshore	Rakai	Kijanebalola	3,023	Eco	Kijanebalola FR lies at the southern part of L. Kijanebalola and serves as watershed catchment for the lake on which people of Kagamba Subcounty, Rakai Town Council and Buyamba Subcounty depend for Water.The steep hills provide relief for rainfall to supplement production activities. Due to encroachment L. Kijanebalola is disappearing.
140	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Kijogolo	300	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria
141	Budongo	Kibaale	Kijuna	1,225	Eco	The forest is encroached and the encroached part is intended to be restored.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
142	Muzizi	Kiboga	Kijwiga	256	Eco	Purpose of gazettment is to protect the drianage system of river Kikooba which flows into R. Kitumbi and forms river Kafu, thus protecting the catchment areas. This FR could be licensed to the private investors.
143	Achwa	Amuru	Kilak	10,205	Eco	Catchment for most water supply sources especialy streams and rivers in Amuru and Parts of Gulu. It protects soil from erosive effects downstream and areas at the bottom of the hill.The Ecosystem is undisturbed thus supporting biological resources especially animals since it neighbours Marchison Falls National Park
144	Kyoga	Jinja	Kimaka	47	Eco	This urban CFR is small but occupies a fragile location within the steep and deep Kimaka River valley and the River Nile.It is a water catchment for Kimaka river that flows into the Nile within the urban area of Jinja Municipality, hence an important river bank protection forest reserve. Besides, Kimaka CFR is playing the important roles of purifying air within the Jinja urban area, draining run-off water along the Kimaka valley and releasing it into the Nile, protecting town soil from erosion, and is an open green space, urban climate amelioration and a strategic fire break incase of fire harzards within the town.Private farmers have been allocated land in the reserve by NFA and for income generation while 2.0 ha were planted as CHOGM forest. The reserve also contains NFA Support Office and regional tree nursery for the eastern Region. It is slightly encroached by cultivation by of the urban dwellers of low income class that use the forest land to grow food crops. Few settlements exist, some settlements were authorized by the Jinja Municipal Authority.
145	Lakeshore	Masaka	Kisaasa	321	Eco	Kisaasa FR lies at the edge of L. Victoria with various streams that pour directly into L. Victoria. The reserve is a catchment for both the streams and L. Victoria on which the people of Bukakata SC depend for domestic and

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						production purposes.
146	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kisakombe	220	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserve that offers protection to Lake Victoria. It is the catchment of Kisakombe river and wetlands that provides domestic water, fish and water for production to the communities of Kisakombe village before joining L. Victoria.
147	South West	Kasese	Kisangi	5,340	Eco	FR acts as wildlife corridor joining Queen Elizabeth Natinal Park and Kibale National Park. These also serve as a wildlife sanctuary which is evergreen during the dry season around L.Kabaleka. The lake is also used by local communities for fishing and water. FR has 4 wetlands which help in filtering wastes from Hima cement and lime factories around the region. The communities of Biganda and Ibuga prison get domestic water and fuelwood from the reserve. FR also helps in modifying the climate around Hima & Rwimi. These therefore supports agriculture.
148	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kisisita	741	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation. Catchment for R.Kisisita that flows into L.Victoria.
149	Lakeshore	Masaka	Kitasi	272	Eco	Kitasi FR is a catchment for the Kitasi stream that crosses the reserve. The reserve is the source of water for the cultivating communities in Kalugondo, Kanamusabala, Nkuke, Minyinya. These communities are involved in commercial pineapple and coffee production.
150	Muzizi	Kyenjojo	Kitechura	5,317	Eco	Rivers include kagenga, mirinchi and muzizi. communities draw water from muzizi river. Hills include mwakia, igongwe, and ibanda.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
151	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Kitemu	60	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria
152	Achwa	Kitgum	Kitgum A & B	14	Eco	Its an urban CFR that protects Pager River which is water source for Kitgum Town but it is proposed for a formal exchange with the Town Council.
153	Muzizi	Kiboga	Kitonya	813	Eco	It has steep slopes and therefore the purpose of gazetment hill steep protection. It has seasonal rivers which link to river Mayanja. This flows th river Kafu and therefore its purpose of gazetment was also catchment area. Reserve is licensed to private farmers.
154	Budongo	Masindi	Kitonya	293	Eco	A hill reserve dedicated to industrial timber production through private sector investment
155	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Kitubulu	80	Eco	This reserve forms part of L.Victoria shore lines in Entebbe municipality. It is good for tourism development. It is important as a green area in Entebbe town and the surrounding urban spread to clean the environment
156	Lakeshore	Kayunga	Kiula	2,147	Eco	R.Ssezibwa and R.Nile catchment and close to L.Kyoga. Kirasa wetland from where the local people collect NTFP for crafts. Baghdad wetland and landing site. Industrial tree planting.
157	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kizinkuba	648	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation. It is a catchment for Kyere stream that provides source of domestic water to the local communities of Kizinkuba village. These streams join L.Victoria.
158	Lakeshore	Mukono	Koja	231	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.



No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
159	Lakeshore	Mukono	Koko	246	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
160	Lakeshore	Mukono	Konde	249	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
161	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Kubanda	207	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria
162	West Nile	Yumbe	Kulua	614	Eco	It is the source of River Kulua which supplies water for domestic and animal consumption for people of Drajin Subcounty. Cultivation along the river bank is causing the river to dry during the dry seasons.
163	Lakeshore	Masaka	Kumbu (North)	3	Eco	Kumbu (N) FR protects the Nabajjuzi wetland which is a home of the National Water and Sewerage Corporation in Masaka. The wetland acts as a natural filter that forms the last phase of treatment after the sewerage pretreatment at the only treatment plant in Masaka District
164	Lakeshore	Masaka	Kumbu (South)	47	Eco	Kumbu (S) FR protects the Nabajjuzi wetland which is a home of the National Water and Sewerage Corporation in Masaka. The wetland acts as a natural filter that forms the last phase of treatment after the sewerage pretreatment at the only treatment plant in Masaka District
165	Lakeshore	Mukono	Kuzitu	158	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
166	Kyoga	Bugiri	Kyabona	124	Eco	Watershed for L. Victoria. Protection against siltation of the fisheries ecosystem of Lugala and Busiro landing sites. Protection of the steep slopes of Siabona against soil erosion and protection of Siabona hill. Protection of the soil against the villages of Siabona, Ndlli, and Walauibi villages in Banda sub county. Stabilisation of the climate of the sub-county of Banda Mutumba, and Buyinga plus Buliha. Protection of the forest to provide fuelwood to the Neighbouring landing sites of Lugala and Wakawaka, Busiro and the towns of Bugiri, Iganga, and Mayuge.
167	Budongo	Hoima	Kyahaiguru	422	Eco	It is a catchment area for River Wambabya which is a source of water for domestic, animal and wildlife use in the areas of Bugambe, Kiziramfumbi and Buseruka Sub-county. It is a potential for industrial timber production through private tree investment and thus employment to the local communities.
168	Budongo	Nakasongola	Kyalubanga	4,393	Eco	It is a water catchment for Serego and Kabuye wetlands which are the main sources of water for animals and domestic use. Serego and Kabuye wetlands feed Lake Kyoga. Heavy encroachment by grazers and cultivators has contributed to the siltation of Lake Kyoga and threatened private investors industrial forest plantations.
169	Lakeshore	Rakai	Kyalwamuka	6,527	Eco	Kyalwamuka FR lies on the Eastern part of Lake Kacheera which is a source of fish for Kacheera subcounty and Lwantoonde district. It is a source of water for the vast Kacheera sub county population which is an agricultural subcounty providing food and commercial crops for Rakai district.
170	Lakeshore	Masaka	Kyamazzi	4,848	Eco	Kyamazzi FR lies on the Northern part of L. Kijanebalola and serves as a catchment for the lake on which the population of Byakabanda and Kyalulangira subcounties depend for water and fish.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
171	Muzizi	Mubende	Kyampisi	1,258	Eco	Hhome to a group of endangered chimps. Part of it has been plantated with Terminalia and Measopsis for seed production. The reserve has seasonal cultivation encroahers. The boundaries need constant maintenance.
172	Budongo	Kibaale	Kyamurangi	417	Eco	It's a natural forest rich with indigenous species (Blighia, Nkalati) that produces quality timber. It is part of the biodiversity corridaaor connecting Muchison Falls, Bugoma, Matiri CFRs and eventually to Semliki NP
173	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Kyansozi	704	Eco	Protects a wetland, one stream passing through into L.Victoria and has 5 protected wells for use of local people.
174	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Kyewaga	209	Eco	This reserve forms part of L.Victoria shore lines in Entebbe municipality. It is good for tourism development. It is important as a green area in Entebbe town and the surrounding urban spread to clean the environment
175	Lakeshore	Masaka	Kyirira	96	Eco	Kyirira is traversed by Nakibaya stream just like Mulundu FR. The Nakibaya stream pours directly into Nabajjuzi wetland. The wetland houses the only water treatment plant in Masaka district.
176	Achwa	Amuru	Labala	1,673	Eco	It is a hill reserve that is a catchment area for Okoli, Omeo, Wenyere, Ajok, and Achwa streams, natural woodland and savannah woodland with scattered valuable tree species like <i>Milicia excelsa</i> , <i>Khaya grandifolia</i> and <i>Albizia spp.</i> It will continue to be managed for the same ecological purposes, and production of high grade timber for furniture
177	Achwa	Kitgum	Lalak	2,212	Eco	A hill reserve that protects the origin of Ajam River which is a water source for for Agoro Subcounty. Today, it is being managed for the same ecological purposes

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
178	Achwa	Kitgum	Lamwo	2,424	Eco	A hill reserve that protects Lamwo stream that is a water source for people in Lukung Subcounty. Today, the FR is still managed for the same ecological purposes but the lower slopes can be planted with industrial timber plantations
179	West Nile	Arua	Laura	2,764	Eco	A hill reserve that protects the Laura range of hills from soil degradation and also acts as water catchment for River Nyara which is the only source of reliable water for animals and for domestic use by communities adjacent to the reserve. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of industrial timber and bio-energy to generate economic returns for the local people.
180	Kyoga	Soroti	Lemutome	117	Eco	Had a much thicker/taller tree canopy making it good for climate amelioration.
181	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Linga	39	Eco	Island forest and protects L. Victoria
182	Achwa	Lira	Lira	130	Eco	Protection of Akole Swamp which is a source of water for Lira Town.
183	West Nile	Koboko	Liru	497	Eco	The CFR is the source of River Oya which serves the people of Lobule Subcounty. River Oya is now drying up as a result of over cultivation of hill bases and over-grazing on the hill tops
184	Achwa	Kitgum	Lokung	1,427	Eco	It protects Lukung River which serves the people of Abakadyek. It was also reserved to conserve a representative sample of bamboo forest

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
185	Achwa	Kabong	Lomej	759	Eco	The CFR constitutes part of the network of critical sites for biodiversity conservation in Uganda and a corridor for wildlife. It is also a Wildlife habitat. This range of hills provides for an opportunity to develop nature tourism like scenic drives and mountain climbing
186	Achwa	Kabong	Lopoecubei	1,090	Eco	Part of the Murongole Range in which is a watershed for rivers serving Kabong District and beyond
187	Achwa	Kabong	Lotim-Putu	1,958	Eco	The CFR constitutes part of the network of critical sites for biodiversity conservation in Uganda and a corridor for wildlife. It is part of the Karamoja Hills, a catchment area for River Kalere and Papa in the Subcounties of Ilalapata and Kathile. This range of hills provides for an opportunity to develop nature tourism like scenic drives and mountain climbing
188	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Lufuka	267	Eco	Lies within wetland and protects one stream pouring into L.Victoria, two protected wells within the reserve serves local people with water for domestic use. Bio-energy and building poles extracted for subsistence use from the CFR.
189	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Lujabwa	47	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria
190	Lakeshore	Mukono	Lukale	383	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
191	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Lukalu	231	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
192	Achwa	Gulu	Lukodi	163	Eco	It is a catchment area for river Unyama River serving Lokodi community. Tree seed centre is allocated land here for establishing seed stand.
193	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Lukolo	176	Eco	Helps to protect the loose sandy lakeshore soils, protects the Lakeshores of Lake Victoria, meets local demands of bio-energy and building poles and supports agricultural production.
194	West Nile	Arua	Luku	4,043	Eco	Protects the range of hills including Gimbara, Odruva, Oguruku, Ojioze, Nokiri, Oyi & Luku hills. A number of streams like Odukudu, Linya, Okangalika, Agoyiva, Olemika, and Ozukuva originate from these hills, supplying water to Ajia, Ogoko, Ulepi & Arivu subcounties. The FR was also intended to be a sanctuary for birds and a source of forest products to the surrounding communities. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted as a core reserve for production of industrial timber and bio-energy into which the smaller reserves in the area and out-growers can feed for industrial processing
195	Muzizi	Mityana	Lukuga	114	Eco	Watershed for River Kabirondo. This river is a boundary between Mityana and Kiboga district but flow Bukomero sub county. Its purpose of gazettment is water shedprotection. It is planted with pine (NFA Plantation).
196	Lakeshore	Mukono	Luleka	396	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation. Catchment for Luleka stream that drains into Lake Victoria. The stream is the sole source of fresh water for domestic use of the local communities of Luleka village.
197	West Nile	Nebbi	Lulu Kayonga	114	Eco	Constitutes part of the network of protected areas (Murchison Falls, Wadelai and Lul Kayonga) that protect the northern shores of Lake Albert and Albert Nile. The reserve also acts as water catchment for some streams which empty

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						their water into Lake Albert. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of forest products like timber by small-holder outgrowers
198	West Nile	Nebbi	Lulu Oming	373	Eco	Together with other CFRs it protects the drainage system which empties into the Albert Nile. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of forest products like honey and services like scenic drives and mountain hiking to generate economic returns.
199	West Nile	Nebbi	Lulu Opio	249	Eco	A riverine CFR gazetted to protect the drainage system which empties water into the Albert Nile. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of forest products
200	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Lutoboka	403	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria
201	Kyoga	Bugiri	Luvunya	844	Eco	Protection to the R. Luvunya that drains in Kibimba swamp. Protection of the Nalubabwe-Namaji hills from soil erosion and the surrounding villages of Namaji, Nalubabwe, Madowa, Luvunya, Kitodha, Buluwe.
202	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Luwafu	389	Eco	Helps to protect the loose sandy lakeshore soils, protects the Lakeshores of Lake Victoria, meets local demands of bio-energy and building poles and supports agricultural production.
203	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Luwawa	300	Eco	This reserve is along the edge of Mayanja swamp through which river Mayanja flows on its way to join R.Katonga and later into L.Victoria.
204	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Luwungulu	23	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
	re					
205	Achwa	Kabong	Lwala	5,884	Eco	It is part of the Karamoja Hills, a cathment area for Rivers Nalkas, Papa, & Lomusio which supply water to the communities of Narube and Naregepak in Kattule Subcounty. This range of hills provides for an opportunity to develop nature tourism like scenic drives and mountain climbing
206	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Lwamunda	4,696	Eco	This reserve along the edge of Mayanja swamp through which river Mayanja flows on its way to join River Katonga and later into L.Victoria. It is also a water source for Muduma and Bujuko trading centers.
207	Lakeshore	Mukono	Mabira	29,964	Eco	A watershed for the Lake Victoria/Kyoga/R. Nile System. R.Musamya from L.Victoria with Griffin falls, Musamya swamp, R.Ssezibwa to L.Kyoga. R.Waliga tributary to R.Nile from Mabira. Tourism investment (Mabira Nature based, Griffin falls, Community ecotourism). Strategic future management is ecotourism. An important forest for research and education, being located in the middle of a fast-growing urban/industrial conurbation. Collaborative Forest Management being done with local forest communities of Nagojje, Najjembe, Wakisi, Ntunda, and Kangulumira subcounties in Mukono and Kayunga districts. Regulates climate in the area so that commercial sugar estates close to Mabira forest do not incur cost of irrigation whereas those in Jinja incurs cost of irrigation. by virtue of its location, it cleans the air of industrial gases
208	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Mako	298	Eco	Mako is a big wetland area with big stream forming the water supply chain for Mpigi town. It borders L.Victoria.
209	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Makoko	36	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria



No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
	re					
210	Lakeshore	Mukono	Makokolero	104	Eco	Protects wetlands along the boundary and a water basin which serves the neighbouring communities.
211	Lakeshore	Mukono	Mala Island	3	Eco	Island forest and protects the L.Victoria from siltation
212	Lakeshore	Rakai	Malabigambo	11,173	Eco	Malabigambo forms one of the blocks of Sango Bay which is an important biodiversity area of international importance. Malabigambo is traversed by the Bukoora River which is joined by other streams that pour directly into L. Victoria.
213	Lakeshore	Masaka	Manwa (S.E)	118	Eco	Manwa (S.E) is a riverline FR that lies along the Manwa river which pours into lake victoria. Both the river and lake provide water for production and domestic purposes for the population.
214	Achwa	Apac	Maruzi	6,118	Eco	Among the network of critical sites of biodiversity conservation in Uganda, with 2 rare species of butterflies and two species of trees unique to East Africa. It covers the slopes of 4 hills, protects 4 streams that drain into Lake Kwania. There is potential to develop nature ecotourism for scenic drives, hiking and mountain climbing
215	Budongo	Masindi	Masindi	39	Eco	This is a water catchment for Rivers Nyangaya and it's tributary River Rwabinoli.This river flows to Lake Kiyanja which supplies Masindi Town with water.The outlet from the Lake Kiyanja joins River Kafu that pours into Lake Kyoga. Bunyoro Kitara Kingdom claimed ownership of the reserve which triggered off settlements in the reserve.The settlers have degraded the river banks through brick making,clearing of vegetation for building and cultivation

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						causing siltation of the river hence a threat to the Masindi Town water supply.
216	Muzizi	Bundibugyo	Mataa	109	Eco	A reserve in the foothills of Mt. Rwenzoori. Important for soil stabilisation and protection against landslides
217	Muzizi	Kyenjojo	Matiri	5,431	Eco	local communities of Rwibale, mukonomura, mahasa, kyankaramata in kihuuru sub county draw water from Matiri CFR. rivers include kahombo, rusesenge, kazizi, kaikasaisha. the hills protected by the CFR include ntutu, bwesese, rusongora, kasunga, rweboha, nyakahama, and itehe. proposals to establish a seed orchard in matiri under way especially for Araucarias. CFM is being initiated in matiri, establishment of an ecotourism site in matiri CFR is underway and plan for constructin of building has been done.
218	South West	Mbarara	Mbarara Plantations	194	Eco	An urban CFR important for cleaning the environment and can be developed into a recreation green. Some of the blocks protect wetlands and water sources for the town
219	Kyoga	Soroti	Modoci	368	Eco	Catchment for L.Kyoga serving villages of Agule parish,Bugonda subcounty.
220	Kyoga	Busia	Monikakinei	163	Eco	Part of the FR protects the part of River Malaba bank which is a distributory to L. Kyoga. R.Malaba is also a water point for the animals of Bisitema, Buteba sub counties in Busia and Lyolwa subcounty in Tororo district. Protection of the soil against erosion of the sorrounding villages of Busabi, Busire and lyolwa areas. Climate stabilisation of the neighbouring towns of Tororo, Busia, and the communities in Busitema trading center and University.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
221	Achwa	Kabong	Morongole	15,063	Eco	The CFR constitutes part of the network of critical sites for biodiversity conservation in Uganda and a corridor for wildlife. It is part of the Karamoja Hills, a catchment area for River Nalkas, a source of water for Kapedo Subcounty communities, protecting the soils, and sustaining the permanent settlement along the boundary. This range of hills provides for an opportunity to develop nature tourism like scenic drives and mountain climbing
222	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Mpanga	453	Eco	Protects one stream, a wetland and has 11 protected wells serving the seven villages neighbouring the forest, and tourism attraction due to the high biodiversity; traditionally a research forest
223	Muzizi	Mubende	Mpinve	1,810	Eco	A catchment for R. Kanyogoga which serves the villages of Kanyogoga, Kisoijjo before it flows down to Bukuya Subcounty.
224	West Nile	Yumbe	Mt Kei	40,689	Eco	The CFR is part of the greater cross-boarder ecosystem with Southern Sudan and one of critical sites in the network of protected areas for biodiversity conservation in Uganda It protects the banks Kaya River which forms part of its (Mt. Kei) boundary. It is the origin of the three rivers -Araga, Kechi, and Komi which serve Midigo and Kei Subcounties. It is a hill reserve with a high abundance of Combretum and Terminalia tree spp. which are not common on private land in the surrounding areas
225	Kyoga	Moroto	Mt. Moroto	48,210	Eco	Mt. Moroto CFR is a watershed which supplies water to Moroto urban and rural communities of Matheniko County e.g Matheniko river for domestic use and livestock. Rock faces & shallow soils above them protect rivers from flooding and soil erosion in the valleys. (Tapach, Loyeraboth, Matheniko Rivers). Supply fuel wood and poles for Moroto Township and its surrounding areas.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
226	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Mugomba	725	Eco	Mugomba river drains from this reserve into L.Victoria. It also forms the lake shorelines in Ssisa sub-county.
227	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Mugoye	945	Eco	Island forest and protects the L.Victoria from siltation.The only breeding place for parrots on the island.
228	Muzizi	Kyenjojo	Muhangi	2,044	Eco	A closed tropical moist forest that protects the banks of river Muzizi
229	Budongo	Kibaale	Muhunga	399	Eco	A catchment area for River Muhunga which serves as a water source for both Kibaale and Karuguuza piped water before draining into Muzizi River. Encroachment and illegal pitsawing are threatening to reduce its ecological functions
230	Lakeshore	Masaka	Mujuzi	6,079	Eco	Mujuzi FR lies along L. Victoria and is traversed by a network of streams including Kirala, Kagezi and Kitta which power into a bigger Mujuzi river that feeds L. victoria directly.The waters from all streams and lake are for domestic and production work for people of Kyanamukaka SC
231	Muzizi	Mityana	Mukambwe	192	Eco	A hill reserve which is a watershed for River Kajonde that feeds into Lake Wamala
232	South West	Kabale	Muko	168	Eco	Planted with pine, the CFR protects some of the steep hills bordering Lake Bunyonyi
233	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Mulenga	80	Eco	Island forest and protects the L.Victoria from siltation.
234	Muzizi	Mityana	Musamya	746	Eco	Has a good stand with primates and birds which are unique.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
235	Kyoga	Jinja	Mwiri	142	Eco	This is a hilly CFR that was gazetted purposely to protect the Mwiri hills from soil erosion. The hills are watersheds for a number of streams that are sources of domestic water and water for economic activities of the surrounding local communities of the area. NFA has planted part of CFR with pine that shield Mwiri Secondary School from strong wind, gives beauty to the hill and the school and ameliorate the school climatic conditions.
236	Lakeshore	Mukono	Mwola	629	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation. Directly borders with and protects L.Victoria from siltation. Catchment for River Mwola that flows into Mwola swamp before entering the lake. The river is the source of both domestic and water for production to the communities of Mwola while the forest provides the conducive environment for agricultural production.
237	Lakeshore	Mukono	Nabanga	477	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation. It is a natural forest and catchment for River Nakibega that flows into Nakibega swamp on its way to Lake Victoria. River Nakibega is the source of both domestic and water for production to the communities of Nabanga parish. It creates microclimatic conditions that is conducive for the economic activities of the local communities of Nabanga. NFA has restored the formerly encroached areas by re-planting.
238	Lakeshore	Masaka	Nabukonge	184	Eco	Nabukonge is a watershed forest with many streams joining the major Nabukonge stream which provides water to people and animals around. It is currently planted with valuable tree species like pines, teak, Araucaria which will be a source of timber and employment to the population.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
239	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Nadagi	479	Eco	Catchment forest R. Ssezibwa. Urban industrial private sector plantations. Seed stand for fast growing tree species. Source of water for neighbouring sub-counties of Naama and Nagojje
240	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Nakaga	277	Eco	Lies within wetlands, three protected wells serving five neighbouring villages with safe water for both humans and animals
241	Lakeshore	Mukono	Nakalanga	1,598	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
242	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Nakalere	684	Eco	One stream passes through with small wetlands around and is the major source of water for local communities. The only source of bio-energy for the local communities.
243	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Nakaziba	101	Eco	Has one stream passing through the forest serving four villages as major source of water in Mpenja Sub county. Two shallow wells from within the reserves also supplement the supply of water during dry season.
244	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Nakindiba	142	Eco	Is a watercatchment area for Kakira town, a water source (electric borehole) for buyanja village and a seed source for terminalia superba.
245	Lakeshore	Masaka	Nakitondo	174	Eco	Nakitondo acts as a catchment for the Kajjudde stream which connects to the Mujuzi river which in turn feeds L. Victoria. Kajjudde stream is a source of water for the people of Kyanamukaka, Kyambazi, Mulema, Kabanda, Kyantate and Kyatokoolo.
246	Lakeshore	Mukono	Nakizza	673	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
247	Lakeshore	Mukono	Nakunyi	111	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
248	Budongo	Kibaale	Nakuyazo	342	Eco	It is a water catchment for Nakiriba River & wetland which drain into Nkuse River at Kikwaya. It is still a young forest with potentially good valuable timber species and therefore a future source of timber for industrial use.
249	Muzizi	Kiboga	Nakwaya	477	Eco	It has steep slopes & seasonal rivers which draws into river kabirondo/Lukuge which flows to Bukomero and therefore its purpose of gazettment was protection of protection of steep slopes, and the associated watershed. Its currently planted by NFA.
250	Kyoga	Butaleja	Nakwiga	111	Eco	FR protects River banks of R. Namuya that is used by the neighbouring communities of Busolwe Town council, Busolwe, sub county, Butalefa subcounty and Paya subcounty. Reserve acts as a filtration for the water points in Busolwe Town council, Busolwe Subcounty, Butaleffa subcounty and Paye subcounty. Supply of poles and fuelwood for the communities in Busolwe, Butalefa and Paya subcounties.
251	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Nalubaga	262	Eco	This reserve is along the edge of Mayanja swamp through which river Mayanja flows on its way to join R.Katonga and later into L.Victoria.
252	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Naludugavu	181	Eco	A stream passing through joining the one of Kyansozi, 4 protected wells and partly for private plantation
253	Lakeshore	Mukono	Namabowe	130	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
254	Lakeshore	Rakai	Namalala	2,430	Eco	Namalala FR lies at the edge of L.victoria and forms part of the Kagera flood

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
	re					plain that filters water entering the lake.
255	Kyoga	Kamuli	Namalemba	54	Eco	The reserve is an important catchment for and protects R. Lumbuye from silting as it flows to Mpologoma swamp. River Lumbuye is the source of water for animals, domestic use and crop production for the surrounding community, besides provision of bio-energy resources and medicinal plants. The CFR was fully stocked by <i>Milicia excelsa</i> (Mvule) that was depleted illegally.
256	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Namanve	1,212	Eco	Lake shore and wetland protection. Protect streams for Mukono and Kira town councils. Protects wetlands Nananve and Nakyebe.
257	Kyoga	Mbale	Namatale	663	Eco	The CFR is a natural forest and continuous with Mt.Elgon National Park to the north western end, therefore forming parts of the Mt.Elgon Ecosystem.The CFR is located in a basin and forms a catchment for nine (9) smaller rivers from Mt. Elgon which join into one River Namatale at the beginning of the reserve. R.Namatale is the major river flowing out from Mt. Elgon from this direction. The smaller rivers include: Ezimeru, Nagabita,Nakityale, Sibelo, Namafumbilo, Namalogo, Maboni, Nabona and Naluwali and they are the major source of domestic water and water for other economic activities to local people of Bufumbo Subcounty in Mbale District and Buteza/Buyobo Subcounty in Sironko District.The CFR protects several hills against soil erosion which hills form part of the Mt.Elgon ranges with steep to very steep sides. It is the source of water supplies to Mbale town, Bududa, Pallisa, Buteleja. It flows to the low and flat land of Kumi and Pallisa Districts as it joins Mpologoma River, and in the process, supplies water to the local people in these districts.



No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
258	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Namatembe	241	Eco	Island forest and protects the L.Victoria from siltation. Provides a breeding place for 'masiinya' fish, a delicacy in the area.
259	Lakeshore	Mukono	Namatiwa	1,611	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation. Catchment for River Namatiwa from where the local people from Namaziina village derive they domestic water and water for other economic activities. The river drains its water into Lake Victoria.
260	Kyoga	Jinja	Namavundu	704	Eco	An important river bank protection forest reserve sharing boundary with River Nile, hence a water catchment forest for River Nile. Part of the reserve (105ha) has been established as a Demonstration plantation by NFA to show good practice in plantation management to the private tree farmers. The private tree farmers have also planted part of the reserve (599ha). The swamps and river banks have been left for protection of the river and swamps. Management challenges include cattle grazing and growing of agricultural crops.
261	Lakeshore	Kayunga	Namawanyi-Namananga	456	Eco	Is a catchment for Nalwe and Wugula streams which connects the main Mabira forest CFR to Musamya swamp. It maintains water for agricultural production especially of pineapple for farmers surrounding the CFRs. this has made Kangulumira to be the leading in pineapple production in Uganda.
262	Kyoga	Jinja	Namazigiri	215	Eco	This is a hilly CFR that was gazetted purposely to protect the Namasigiri hills from soil erosion. The hills are watersheds for a number of streams that are sources of domestic water and water for economic activities of the surrounding local communities of the area. NFA has planted part of CFR with pine.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
263	Lakeshore	Mukono	Namukupa	280	Eco	It protects the river bank of R.Musamya and protects from silting. It is a source of domestic water to villages of Namakupa and Kitayunja in Ntunda sub-county. It is a source of NTFP e.g papyrus for the local people in Ntunda sub-county.
264	Lakeshore	Mukono	Namyoya	389	Eco	Protects the banks of river Namyoya. Part of it has been planted by private investors
265	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Nanfuka	334	Eco	Major source of bio-energy for the local communities, one stream passing through as major source of water for seven neighbouring villages, building poles and herbs for local use derived from the reserves.
266	Achwa	Abim	Nangolebwal	20,210	Eco	Among the network of critical sites of biodiversity conservation in Uganda. The great Nangolebwal River provides water to the local communities in the Subcounties of Morolem ,Nyakwae and the neighbouring districts of Amuria and Katakwi. There is potential to develop nature ecotourism for scenic drives, hiking and mountain climbing
267	Kyoga	Moroto	Napak	20,316	Eco	In Napaka, are Okere and Okwanges rivers which are permanent water sources that supply cattle and the communities of Kadike, Lothar, Michokho,etc. Napaka is a catchment area for L. Kyoga. Galley forest alongside the rivers, acts wind breaks between the adjoining lands of Teso and Karamoja. Source of biodiversity conservation e.g supports two species, 2 butterflies and 1 moth not found elsewhere in Uganda's forests.
268	Achwa	Abim	Napono	3,727	Eco	A hill reserve with some rivers originating in the reserve serving Abim and Pader Districts. It is part of the network of critical biodiversity conservation sites in Uganda

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
269	Lakeshore	Mukono	Natyonko	1,435	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation. It is a catchment for River Natyonko that provides domestic water and water for economic activities of the local people in Kiyora, Buzu and Namazina villages while on its way to Natyonko swamp that borders L. Victoria.
270	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Navugulu	2,714	Eco	Basically riverine forest protecting several streams and has 15 protected wells.
271	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Nawandigi	3,766	Eco	The reserve is along streams and swamps that empties into Lake Victoria.
272	Muzizi	Mubende	Nfuka-Magobwa	1,619	Eco	Along R. Kitumbi dividing Mubende & Kiboga districts. It is made up of several hills and the purpose of gazettment was watershed protection because it borders Kitumbi river that is a water source for all the villages around.
273	Lakeshore	Mukono	Ngogwe (Bwema Island)	62	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
274	Kyoga	Jinja	Nile Bank	606	Eco	Another important river bank protection forest reserve sharing boundary with River Nile, hence a catchment forest for R. Nile. CFR earmarked for NFA planting and together with participation of the local communities as contract workers, NFA has already planted 255ha (43%) of the reserve in areas vacated by encroachers. Part of the reserve falls within the Itanda-Kalagala Tourism Offset and has been zoned for ecotourism development and some parts licensed out to a private investor to develop tourism facilities. Main management challenge is cultivation encroachment and grazing livestock in the unplanted parts.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
275	Lakeshore	Mukono	Nimu	334	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
276	Muzizi	Kyenjojo	Nkera	790	Eco	mukubuli river a source for water for the community. Hills include kanyamaizi.
277	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Nkese	8	Eco	Island forest and protects the L.Victoria from siltation.
278	Lakeshore	Mukono	Nkogwe	311	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
279	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Nkose	124	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
280	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Nonve	738	Eco	This reserve is along the edge of Mayanja swamp through which river Mayanja flows on its way to join R.Katonga and later into L.Victoria.
281	South West	Bushenyi	North Maramagambo	29,127	Eco	The CFR is a water catchment for rivers Nchwera, Sherere, Rwampunu, Keizi that drain into Lake Edward. The CFR is an important water catchment for the blue lakes and lake Nyamusingiri and Kibona wetland. The forest is a habitat for a variety of wildlife from butterflies to elephants. The forest cover in N. Maramagambo protects the fragile soils against erosion. The CFR contributes significantly to climate amelioration. Ecotourism is on-going in the Northern parts of the CFR.
282	Muzizi	Bundibugyo	North Rwenzori	3,665	Eco	Located in the foot hills of Mt. Rwenzori, the CFR serves a soil stabilisation function, protecting the area from landslides.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
283	South West	Ntungamo	Ntungamo	13	Eco	Water catchment area for river Kyamate. Only FR in Ntungamo district. The forest supplies fuel wood and construction poles to Ntungamo town council. Creates employment and alleviates poverty through awarding of management activity contracts to local communities.
284	Budong o	Kibaale	Nyabigoye	495	Eco	The forest is a water catchment area for Nkuse River which drains into Muzizi River
285	Budong o	Kibaale	Nyabiku	355	Eco	This is still a young forest with high value tree species along River Nyabiku which drains into Ruzaire at Imara. The Forest is highly and the encroached part is intended to be restored while conserving the existing forest patches
286	Muzizi	Bundibugyo	Nyaburongo	174	Eco	Located in the foot hills of Mt. Rwenzori, the CFR serves a soil stabilisation function, protecting the area from landslides.
287	Budong o	Masindi	Nyabyeya	347	Eco	This reserve is a training forest for the only forestry college in Uganda that offers both theoretical and practical skills in forestry and other forestry related courses like agroforestry, bee keeping, biomass and energy conservation, carpentry both at certificate and diploma levels. It protects the water points for domestic use in Nyabyeya Parish. The plantation provides raw materials (logs) used by the sawmill located in the forestry college for the production of commercial timber.
288	Budong o	Kibaale	Nyakarongo	3,535	Eco	It protects the banks of Mbaya River which feeds into River Nguse draining into Muzizi River and eventually into Lake Albert. The CFR is important for biodiversity connectivity as it connects Semliki NP to MFNP via Bugoma, Kagombe and Itwara as explained above. It is under threats of encroachment and illegal timber cutting which reduces its chances of providing high value

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						timber for future use since its still a young forest.
289	Achwa	Kabong	Nyangea Napore	41,741	Eco	It is a hill reserve that is among the CFRs that constitute the network of critical sites of biodiversity in uganda; it protects Kidepo River valley for consrevation of wild life. It is also a hill reserve.
290	Achwa	Apac	Obel	145	Eco	The CFR protects Ayita Yaba Gwen Swamp & Akello Ataka River, draining into Okole Wetland
291	Kyoga	Soroti	Odudui	197	Eco	It's a catchment for L. Kyoga and supply of water to Angai&Odudui villages. Supply of forest products to the surrounding communities.
292	Kyoga	Soroti	Ogata-Akimenga	526	Eco	Catchment for part of L. Kyoga serving Ogata & Akimenga villages in Pingire Sub-county.
293	Kyoga	Soroti	Ogera Hills	427	Eco	Protects steep &rocky hills.
294	Achwa	Pader	Ogili	5,348	Eco	A hill reserve that is among the critcal sites for conservation in uganda that protects warbogia spp
295	Achwa	Pader	Ogom	800	Eco	It protects River Achwa water catchment areas and it was originally reserve to conserve representative samples of bamboo forests
296	Lakeshore	Mukono	Olamusa	391	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
297	Achwa	Lira	Olia	212	Eco	River Agwar flows through the reserve and it has the biggest wetland running from Aromo subcounty and stretches towards Oyam District.
298	West Nile	Nebbi	Omier	2,380	Eco	A hill reserve that protects Abiba, Ayogo and Awu hill tops from soil erosion and it's also a very important catchment area for river Nyagak where a hydro power plant is being constructed for the West Nile region. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of industrial timber plantations and transmission poles by private investors
299	Achwa	Dokolo	Onekoeko	259	Eco	The CFR protects the seasonal Iyama swamp which is a catchment for Lake Kwania. It is located 2 km from the headquarters of the recently created Dokolo District and will therefore be managed for regulating the upcoming urban environment, in addition to providing commercial forest products for people living around the reserve.
300	Kyoga	Katakwi	Onyurut	158	Eco	It's a catchment for L. Bisina. It acts as a windbreak for Toroma trading center. Katakwi Township on the eastern part. Supply of forest products to the communities around L. Bisina. Habitat for Wildlife.
301	Achwa	Dokolo	Otukey	2,078	Eco	One of the Nangolebwal Hill Reserves that constitute part of the network of critical biodiversity sites in Uganda.
302	West Nile	Moyo	Otzi East	18,757	Eco	The CFR is part of the network of critical sites for biodiversity conservation in Uganda. it protects the source of water for Moyo Town Council & Metu S. County; key streams include Chala, Apipi, Amua, Ayiro, Ubi, Ayido, and Awodo.
303	West	Moyo	Otzi West	425	Eco	The CFR is part of the network of critical sites for biodiversity conservation in

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
	Nile					Uganda. It is a water catchment for streams feeding into River Nile.
304	Achwa	Kitgum	Paonyeme	339	Eco	It protects Ayago River which is a water source for Padibe West; It was also gazetted for the conservation of a representative sample of bamboo forests
305	Achwa	Pader	Parabongo	2,792	Eco	A hill reserve that protects Parabongo hills from erosion. The streams of Okura, Wangkidi, Wang Furatelo originate from the reserve and serve Kalongo Town. Today, the FR is still managed for the same ecological purposes but the lower slopes can be planted with industrial timber plantations
306	Kyoga	Soroti	Pingire	687	Eco	FR is only 2km from one of the tributaries of L. Kyoga in Omerai Village, Pingire Subcounty. The lake is a source of lining fish and watering animals of the whole subcounty, Karamoja, Okidi, Ongongei. Provides timber to the whole Teso sub region, the only forest with mature pine plantation in this region. Acts as a watershed & shore protection for L. Kyoga.
307	Kyoga	Tororo	Pokoli	21	Eco	Reserve supports the banks of the R. Pokoli that supports the communities of Molo subcounty, Nerikit and Tororo municipal council. FR acts as a swampy and water sources that support Rivers Pokoli and two springs. Supply of poles and fuelwood to Tororo municipal council and surrounding subcounties of Molo, Merikit, and Mukujju.
308	Achwa	Kitgum	Rom	10,904	Eco	A hill reserve that protects Rom Hill and provides wood products to the people in Namukora. It is one of the CFRs that constitute the network of critical sites for biodiversity in Uganda.
309	Budongo	Kibaale	Rukara	456	Eco	The forest protects the banks of River Rukara for which the reserve constitutes a catchment area; this river / stream drains into River Ruzaire. The local communities along this Rukara River use it for domestic and small-scale



No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						industrial processing. It's also a young forest with a high potential of future valuable timber tree species for industrial use
310	South West	Rukungiri	Rukungiri	26	Eco	CFR is a water catchment area which supplies Rukungiri town. absorbs toxic gases emitted by urban activities in Rukungiri towns. -Forest reduces speed of surface run-off of rain water and filters the percolating water. Provides construction materials and fuel wood.
311	Budongo	Kibaale	Ruzaire	1,160	Eco	The forest acts as a water catchment area for Ruzaire River which eventually drains into Nkuse and Muzizi Rivers
312	Budongo	Kibaale	Rwengeye	329	Eco	It protects the banks of River Pachwa which drains into Nkuse River which in turn eventually drains into Muzizi River and finally to Lake Albert. It is part of the biodiversity corridor connecting Murchison Falls Park, Budongo, Bugoma to Materi - Itwara CFRs and Semlik NP. It is also a watershed for Nkuse River, which eventually feeds into Lake Albert. It is a young high forest with a potential for producing high value timber from natural forest. Encroachment is a serious threat to the ecological and economic functions of the reserve;
313	Budongo	Masindi	Rwensama	127	Eco	The forest protects Sonso river and other water points used by the local community for domestic use in Nyabyeya Parish, Budongo Subcounty. It is used by Nyabyeya Forestry College for training and research. It has a high potential for Eco-tourism as it has a variety of wildlife including chimpanzees and unique natural high forest plants. The forest contains a high population of young mahogany and being near the Masindi-Butiaba highway, its prone to illegal timber activities

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
314	Kyoga	Budaka	Sala	316	Eco	Namatale, Nabiyonga and Sala flow through the swampy area of the reserve and form part of the Nile drainage system that flows to L. Kyoga via R. Mpologoma. The FR suffers excess of water during rainy seasons. FR has been of recent allocated to private tree farmers. Trees planted are doing well. Its a source of revenue for NFA. Local communities from Kirika in Budaka and Kotolo in Tirinyi rely on the reserve for papyrus for roofing handcrafts and water.
315	Kyoga	Soroti	Sambwa	282	Eco	Catchment area for Sambwa swamp which connects between the CFR & L. Kyoga at Karamoja Village, Pingire sub-county.
316	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Sekazinga	3	Eco	Island forest and protects the L.Victoria from siltation. Catchment for R.Gala that flows into L.Victoria and provides fresh water to the local communities of the area.
317	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Semunya	728	Eco	Semunya river drains from this reserve into L.Victoria. It also forms the lake shorelines in Kasanje sub-county. Planes preparing to land at Entebbe airport descend from this area.
318	Kyoga	Busia	Sitambogo	650	Eco	Protection of the steep hills and the surrounding parishes of Bukhubalo (Busia district) and Buluguyi (Bugiri district). Protection of steep hills of Nakoma, Namwa, Buhisi, Lubanga, Nawanga, Mombasa, Sitambogo.
319	Kyoga	Soroti	Soroti	398	Eco	Acts as a wind break and also modifies the climate for Soroti municipality. Source of water for the low income earners e.g in Akisim, Apiyi, the Usuk cell, Kengene ward, Alibu, Kamushwhi ward etc. It's a water shed for L.Kyoga. (The rivers empty to Awoja Swamp and then to L.Kyoga). Source of construction poles and income generation from tree nurseries.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
320	Kyoga	Mayuge	South Busoga	16,382	Eco	The FR protects the shores of L. Victoria which is a breeding ground for fish. Provides unique micro-climate which is important for better livelihoods for communities around the forest reserve especially Malongo and Kityerera Sub counties.
321	South West	Rukungiri	South Maramagambo	15,175	Eco	CFR is a water catchment for rivers Rushaya, Nchwera, Rugaizi that drain into Lake Edward. Rivers Rushaya and Rugazi are important sources of domestic water for the parishes of Kikarara Bwambara, Nyabubare and Kanyabwanga in Rukungiri and Bushenyi districts. The forest provides sanctuary to a variety of wildlife since it is adjacent to Kigezi wildlife Reserve which is part of Queen Elizabeth protected areas. The forest cover protects soils against erosion and land slides. The forest supplies local communities with NTFP such as herbal medicine, dead wood. The forest contributes for local community significantly to climate amelioration. It is a source of timber products for local communities adjacent to the FR. 30 hectares of the reserve are under pine plantations by the private sector.
322	Lakeshore	Mukono	Sozi	220	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
323	Muzizi	Kiboga	Taala	9,150	Eco	Purpose of gazettment is to protect the drainage system of R. Kitumbi and river Lugulima that join and flow north into R.Kafu. Taala is good for biodiversity with its unique butterflies and it is said to have habitted some hippos and buffalos that have all migrated due to human pressure. 50% of the FR is licensed to commercial tree planting for private tree planters.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
324	Lakeshore	Rakai	Tero East	1,121	Eco	Tero East is a swamp FR that lies adjacent L. Victoria, forming a filter for water entering the lake from different parts of Kyebe and Kabira subcounties. It houses large mammals like Elephants, buffaloes and hippos.
325	Lakeshore	Rakai	Tero West	2,690	Eco	Tero West is another wetland block that lies close to L. Victoria acting as a water filter for water entering the lake from Kakuuto subcounty.
326	Achwa	Kabong	Timu	11,751	Eco	Among the network of critical sites of biodiversity conservation in Uganda. its ahill reserve, part of karamoja hills, has river katorosa and r.namoru a water source for the communities . the ik ( teuso) who co-exist with the forest derive their livelihood from the forest
327	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Tonde	65	Eco	Island forest and protects L.Victoria
328	Kyoga	Tororo	Tororo	369	Eco	Supports River banks of R. Aturukuku that supports the village of Mfangole, Kazoli, Juba, Rubongi and water villages and pours into R. Mpologoma that pours into L. Kyoga. Protection of Agururu swamp that filters water in the municipal council and the sub counties of Lubongi, and Osukuru. Four springs of water in the reserve that supports the communities in Tororo municipality, Rubongi barracks, and Osukuru subcounty plus Mukujju subcounty. Supply of poles and fuelwood to the communities of Tororo, Malaba and Mbale areas.
329	Lakeshore	Kalangala	Towa	1,506	Eco	Island forest and protects the L.Victoria from siltation. Catchment for for R.Mufto that pours into L.Victoria and provides fresh domestic water to the local community in the area.
330	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Tumbi	513	Eco	This reserve is along the edge of Mayanja swamp through which river Mayanja flows on its way to join R.Katonga and later into L.Victoria.

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
331	Budongo	Nakasongola	Wabisi-Wajala	4,453	Eco	It forms a network of forests which are part of the watershed for Lake Kyoga. It has been set aside for tree planting investment, but encroachers are a threat to private tree investors.
332	Lakeshore	Masaka	Wabitembe	298	Eco	Wabitembe FR is a riverline forest reserve traversed by the Wabitembe stream which is joined by several other streams that are a source of water for the population that is engaged in commercial farming of passion fruits and coffee.
333	Lakeshore	Wakiso	Wakayembe	179	Eco	This reserve is along the edge of Mayanja swamp through which river Mayanja flows on its way to join R.Katonga and later into L.Victoria.
334	Kyoga	Iganga	Walugogo	57	Eco	This is an urban CFR, most of which is covered by Lumbuye wetland and protects River Lumbuye from siltation. The CFR is playing the important roles of purifying air, urban climate amelioration, open space and protecting the Iganga urban area from erosion. All the waste water from Iganga town ends up in the swamp where it is purified for domestic use for the local communities living downstream along River Lumbuye.
335	Muzizi	Mityana	Walugondo	161	Eco	It has streams and a river in flowing originates from L.Wamala This river serves almost 200 people with water.
336	Kyoga	Iganga	Walulumbu	119	Eco	The CFR is a woodland forest located in Waitambogwe subcounty, Mayuge District and by the Lake Victoria , hence one of the lakeshore forest reserves, protecting Lake Victoria from siltation. Protects the steep rocky hills of Busuyi, Basaramu and Ntinkalu found inside the reserve from soil erosion that would end up into the lake. The local communities from the villages surrounding Busaramu, Busunyi and Ntinkalu hills derive all fuel wood, medicine and other products from this reserve since the surrounding areas are all covered with

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						Kakira and outgrowers' sugarcane plantations. Challenges to proper management of the reserve include illegal cultivation and illegal stone quarrying.
337	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Walumwanyi	399	Eco	Water catchment area for Buddo, Katende and Nakawuka areas. The streams from this reserve end up into L. Victoria.
338	Lakeshore	Kayunga	Wamale	1,950	Eco	One of the three CFRs ringning Lake Kyoga and sitting along River Nile as it enters Lake Kyoga. It has been licensed for tree growing.
339	Budongo	Hoima	Wambabya	3,429	Eco	Protects River Wambabya which is a source of water for people and domestic animals in the sub-counties of Busereka, Bugambe and Kiziranfumbi. It forms part of a net work of protected areas that constitute the watershed on the Eastern Rim of Lake Albert. It is one of the natural forests that forms the biodiversity corridor connecting Budongo CFR, Murchison National Park, Bugoma CFR and Kabwoya Wildlife Reserve. Encroachment in the area is a big threat to the ecological functions of the forest.
340	Lakeshore	Mpigi	Wantayi	238	Eco	A wetland forest covering a catchment area for R. Mayanja

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
341	West Nile	Nyadri	Wati	764	Eco	Protects the steep hills of the Mt. Wati System and the streams that originate from there. A gravity water flow scheme which served the local communities has dried up due to deforestation as a result of cultivation and over-harvesting of woodfuel, leaving the hill slopes bare. Today, the FR is still managed for the same environmental purposes but it is also targeted for production of forest products like honey and services like scenic drives and mountain hiking to generate economic returns
342	Kyoga	Busia	West Bugwe	3,054	Eco	FR protects River Solo which supplies water to parishes of Busitema, Syanyonja, Buhumi& Habuleke. The spring wells supply water to communities in Shule and Busitema as well as Hamasanja villages. Protection of steep hills from soil erosion and the surrounding sub-counties of Busitema and Bulumbi. Stabilisation of climate and regulation of rainfall pattern in the districts of Bugiri, Busia, Tororo, and western Kenya. Supply of firewood to the Tororo cement industries and the neighbouring towns of Busia, Bugiri, & Tororo.
343	Achwa	Amuru	Wiceri	6,470	Eco	It is the source and watershed for streams and rivers for serving the people of Amuru with water and joining River Nile e.g omee stream serving Omee community. It supports animal population from the Marchison Falls National Park.
344	Lakeshore	Mukono	Yubwe	197	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offers protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
345	Muzizi	Kiboga	Zimwa	834	Eco	Forms part of the Singo Hills, Singo County of Northern Buganda. Consists of steep hills that requires protection from soil erosion. The CFR is the source of River Karaga flowing from Bukomero area through the reserve. Part of it has been licensed to private tree farmers who have already planted about 10% of

No.	Range	District	Central Forest Reserve	Area (ha)	Main Function	Notes
						the reserve.
346	Lakeshore	Mukono	Zirimiti	935	Eco	The reserve is one of the lakeshore Forest Reserves that offer protection to Lake Victoria from siltation.
347	West Nile	Ajumani	Zoka	6,089	Eco	The CFR is part of the network of critical sites for biodiversity conservation in Uganda, with a unique flying squirrel. It is a water catchment area for Zoka, Itiriwa, Esia, Lidwi & Dangani streams.
348	Achwa	Kabong	Zulia	91,612	Eco	The CFR is also part of the Kidepo Conservation Area under joint management with UWA. It is part of the Karamoja range of hills, constituting part of the network of critical sites for biodiversity conservation in Uganda. It is a catchment area for streams pouring into Kidepo River, protecting the Kidepo River itself, a water supply source sustaining the permanent settlement in the Subcounty.
349	Kyoga	Amuria	Akileng	611	Eco	Akileng CFR protects the marsland swamps in the forest e.g Akleng swamp. Modification of Teso region climate. Protects the water catchment and supply of poles, firewood etc
350	Kyoga	Kaberamaido	Atigo	938	Eco	Atigo CFR is a catchment area for L. Kyoga and Atigo wetland. Protection of Kaberamaido urban area. Fishing and supply of poles and fuel wood.
				<b>1,055,017</b>		





## ANNEX J: BEST AVAILABLE INFORMATION SOURCES

### Standard Potential Impact Organizations

The Standard Potential Impact Organizations require more in-depth information to guide decision making. To this end, it is important for them as much as possible to engage national and local authorities, scientific experts and/or other knowledgeable stakeholders mandated for or specialized in the ecosystem conservation, protection or restoration. Among such stakeholders include, but not limited to:

1. National Forestry Resources Research Institute (NaFORRI);
2. Wildlife Conservation Society
3. Relevant academic / research institutions such as Makerere University, including College of Natural Sciences (CONAS) and College of Agricultural and College of Veterinary Medicine, Animal Resources and Bio-safety (COVAB)
4. Ministry of Wildlife, Tourism and Antiquities, including the Department of Wildlife Management, Uganda Wildlife Authority, Uganda Tourism Board
5. Ministry of Agriculture, Animal Industry and Fisheries (Plant Protection);
6. Ministry of Energy and Minerals Development;
7. Ministry of Water and Environment, including National Environment Authority, national Forestry Authority, Forestry Sector Support Department,
8. Uganda Revenue Authority
9. Uganda Road Authority
10. World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF) Uganda Office
11. International Union for Nature (IUCN) Uganda
12. Nature Uganda
13. CARE International in Uganda
14. Certified and Registered Environmental Practitioners in Uganda
15. Focal Points for UN Conventions, eg. CBD (NEMA)
16. Engagement\* with indigenous peoples\*, local communities\* and affected stakeholder\* and interested stakeholder\*
17. Consultation with other relevant local and regional experts;

The following are some of the documented sources of information that are useful.

1. Uganda Forest Nature Conservation Master Plan
2. Forest biodiversity reports
3. Local Forestry Development Plans
4. District Environment Plans
5. State of Environment Reports
6. A Guide to the Management of Tropical Moist Forest For Timber Production" for pre-harvesting inventory (compulsory within CFR)
7. Specialized studies
8. Field surveys
9. National HCV Framework for Uganda;
10. HCV surveys of the Management Unit\*
11. Relevant databases and maps;
12. All CITES species and those listed on national, regional and local lists of rare and threatened species\*;
13. For purposes of HCVs, the following sources of information could be used:
  - i. To assess the presence of HCVs: [www.biodiversitya-z.org](http://www.biodiversitya-z.org)
  - ii. Biodiversity Hotspots: [www.biodiversityhotspots.org](http://www.biodiversityhotspots.org) ;

- iii. Intact Forest Landscapes: <http://www.globalforestwatch.org/>. Such areas are highly likely to have HCV 2, and may contain HCV 1;
  - iv. Frontier Forests: [www.wri.org/publication/lastfrontier-forests-ecosystems-and-economiesedge](http://www.wri.org/publication/lastfrontier-forests-ecosystems-and-economiesedge); [www.globalforestwatch.org](http://www.globalforestwatch.org) ;
  - v. WWF Terrestrial Ecoregions: [www.worldwildlife.org/science/ecoregions](http://www.worldwildlife.org/science/ecoregions).
  - vi. WWF Global 200 Ecoregions: [www.worldwildlife.org/science/ecoregions/g200.cfm](http://www.worldwildlife.org/science/ecoregions/g200.cfm) ;
  - vii. Important Bird Areas IBAs, ~12,000 sites worldwide, many quite small (e.g. 314 in Australia): Birdlife International [www.birdlife.org](http://www.birdlife.org) . ;
  - viii. Plant Life International: IPAs, Important Plant Areas: [www.plantlife.org.uk](http://www.plantlife.org.uk) ;
  - ix. World Heritage Sites (207 natural + mixed sites): UNESCO + IUCN. [www.whc.unesco.org](http://www.whc.unesco.org) ;
  - x. Centres of Plant Diversity, IUCN, WCMC. [www.unep-wcmc.org/species/sca/GSPC.htm](http://www.unep-wcmc.org/species/sca/GSPC.htm) ;
  - xi. Conservation International: Key Biodiversity Areas and Important Plant Areas;
  - xii. RAMSAR sites, designated under the Ramsar Convention, the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance (~1900 sites): [www.ramsar.org](http://www.ramsar.org) ;
  - xiii. GSBAs: Globally Significant Biodiversity Areas, identified in some regions;
  - xiv. KBAs, Key Biodiversity Areas, identified with IBAT: Integrated Biodiversity Assessment Tool (IUCN, CI and others),[www.IBATforbusiness.org](http://www.IBATforbusiness.org);
  - xv. Natura2000: System of strict nature reserves in Europe: [www.natura.org](http://www.natura.org) ;
  - xvi. NatureServe: Database especially for species in USA and Canada: [www.NatureServe.org](http://www.NatureServe.org);
  - xvii. IUCN Red List of Threatened Species: <http://www.iucnredlist.org/> .
14. Any other sources of information that may not be included here.

#### **Low Potential Impact Organizations,**

For the Low Potential Impact Organizations, Best Available Information includes what the manager knows and observes, and what he/she learns from neighbours or stakeholders, together with existing assessments and mapping. To this end, the sources of Best Available Information include, but not limited to:

1. Qualifications, competences and experience of the managers;
2. Engagement\* with indigenous peoples\*, local communities\* and affected stakeholder\* and interested stakeholder\*
3. Consultation with other relevant local and regional experts;
4. Guidelines and codes of practice in place (See Annex A), e.g. Guidelines for Management of Private Natural Forests In Uganda, Guidelines for plantation management, etc

## 10. FSC GLOSSARY OF TERMS

This glossary includes internationally accepted definitions from a limited number of sources whenever possible. These sources include the Convention on Biological Diversity (1992), the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005) as well as definitions from online glossaries as provided on the websites of the World Conservation Union (IUCN), the International Labour Organisation (ILO) and the Invasive Alien Species Programme of the Convention on Biological Diversity. When other sources have been used, including the national-level definitions of terms, they are referenced accordingly.

Definitions developed in the course of the Principles and Criteria Review are referenced as FSC 2011. Definitions derived from Version 4-0 of the Principles and Criteria as originally published in November 1994 are referenced as FSC 1994.

The term 'based on' means that a definition was adapted from an existing definition as provided for example in Version 4-0 of the Principles and Criteria or other international source.

Words used in this version of the Principles and Criteria, if not defined in this Glossary of Terms or other normative FSC documents, are used as defined in most standard English language dictionaries.

**Adaptive management:** A systematic process of continually improving management policies and practices by learning from the outcomes of existing measures (Source: Based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website).

**Alien species:** A species, subspecies or lower taxon, introduced outside its natural past or present distribution; includes any part, gametes, seeds, eggs, or propagules of such species that might survive and subsequently reproduce (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), Invasive Alien Species Programme. Glossary of Terms as provided on CBD website).

**Affected stakeholder:** Any person, group of persons or entity that is or is likely to be subject to the effects of the activities of a Management Unit. Examples include, but are not restricted to (for example in the case of downstream landowners), persons, groups of persons or entities located in the neighborhood of the Management Unit. The following are examples of affected stakeholders:

- Local communities
- Indigenous peoples
- Workers
- Forest dwellers
- Neighbors
- Downstream landowners
- Local processors
- Local businesses
- Tenure and use rights holders, including landowners
- Organizations authorized or known to act on behalf of affected stakeholders, for example social and environmental NGOs, labor unions, etc.

(Source: FSC 2011).

**Applicable law:** Means applicable to The Organization as a legal person or business enterprise in or for the benefit of the Management Unit and those laws which affect the implementation of the FSC Principles and Criteria. This includes any combination of statutory law (Parliament-approved) and case law (court

interpretations), subsidiary regulations, associated administrative procedures, and the national Constitution (if present) which invariably takes legal precedence over all other legal instruments (Source: FSC, 2011).

**Best Available Information:** Data, facts, documents, expert opinions, and results of field surveys or consultations with stakeholders that are most credible, accurate, complete, and/or pertinent and that can be obtained through *reasonable*\* effort and cost, subject to the *scale*\* and *intensity*\* of the management activities and the *Precautionary Approach*\* (Source: FSC 2014).

**Binding Agreement:** A deal or pact, written or not, which is compulsory to its signatories and enforceable by law. Parties involved in the agreement do so freely and accept it voluntarily (Source: FSC 2014).

**Biological control agents:** Organisms used to eliminate or regulate the population of other organisms (Source: Based on FSC 1994 and World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website).

**Biological diversity:** The variability among living organisms from all sources including, *inter alia*, terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and the ecological complexes of which they are a part; this includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity 1992, Article 2)

**Biological diversity values:** The intrinsic, ecological, genetic, social, economic, scientific, educational, cultural, recreational and aesthetic values of biological diversity and its components. (see Convention on Biological Diversity, 1992)

**Buffer zone:** A zone within a protected area, protecting particularly sensitive areas such as strict nature reserves from undue human pressure that may exist outside the protected area, usually by allowing some limited and controlled human use within the buffer (Grove, 1995)

**Chain of custody:** The channel through which products are distributed from their origin in the forest to their end-use.

**Certificate:** A document issued under the rules of a certification system, indicating that adequate confidence is provided that a duly identified product, process or service is in conformity with a specific standard or other normative document [ISO/IEC Guide 2:1991 paragraph 14.8 and ISO/CASCO 193 paragraph 4.5].

**Confidential information:** Private facts, data and content that, if made publicly available, might put at risk *The Organization*\*, its business interests or its relationships with stakeholders, clients and competitors (Source: FSC 2014).

**Conflicts between the Principles and Criteria and laws:** Situations where it is not possible to comply with the Principles and Criteria and a law at the same time (Source: FSC 2011).

**Connectivity:** A measure of how connected or spatially continuous a corridor, network, or matrix is. The fewer gaps, the higher the connectivity. Related to the structural connectivity concept; functional or behavioral connectivity refers to how connected an area is for a process, such as an animal moving through different types of landscape elements (Source: Based on R.T.T. Forman. 1995. Land Mosaics. The Ecology of Landscapes and Regions. Cambridge University Press, 632pp). Aquatic connectivity deals with the accessibility and transport of materials and organisms, through groundwater and surface water, between different patches of aquatic ecosystems of all kinds.

**Conservation Areas Network:** Those portions of the *Management Unit*\* for which conservation is the primary and, in some circumstances, exclusive objective; such areas include *representative sample areas*\*, *conservation zones*\*, *protection areas*\*, *connectivity*\*areas and *High Conservation Value Areas*\* (Source: FSC 2014).

**Conservation/Protection:** These words are used interchangeably when referring to management activities designed to maintain the identified environmental or cultural values in existence long-term. Management activities may range from zero or minimal interventions to a specified range of appropriate interventions and activities designed to maintain, or compatible with maintaining, these identified values (Source: FSC 2011).

**Conservation zones and protection areas:** Defined areas that are designated and managed primarily to safeguard species, habitats, ecosystems, natural features or other site-specific values because of their natural environmental or cultural values, or for purposes of monitoring, evaluation or research, not necessarily excluding other management activities. For the purposes of the Principles and Criteria, these terms are used interchangeably, without implying that one always has a higher degree of conservation or protection than the other. The term ‘protected area’ is not used for these areas, because this term implies legal or official status, covered by national regulations in many countries. In the context of the Principles and Criteria, management of these areas should involve active conservation, not passive protection’ (Source: FSC 2011).

**Corruption:** Transparency International (TI) defines corruption as the abuse of entrusted power for private gain. This definition encompasses corrupt practices in both the public and private sectors. The Corruption Perceptions Index (CPI) ranks countries according to the perception of corruption in the public sector. The CPI is an aggregate indicator that combines different sources of information about corruption, making it possible to compare countries. The CPI ranks almost 200 countries by their perceived levels of corruption, as determined by expert assessments and opinion surveys.

**Criterion (pl. Criteria):** A means of judging whether or not a Principle (of forest stewardship) has been fulfilled (Source: FSC 1994).

**Critical:** The concept of criticality or fundamentality in Principal 9 and HCVs relates to irreplaceability and to cases where loss or major damage to this HCV would cause serious prejudice or suffering to affected stakeholders. An ecosystem service is considered to be critical (HCV 4) where a disruption of that service is likely to cause, or poses a threat of, severe negative impacts on the welfare, health or survival of local communities, on the environment, on HCVs, or on the functioning of significant infrastructure (roads, dams, buildings etc.). The notion of criticality here refers to the importance and risk for natural resources and environmental and socio-economic values (Source: FSC 2011).

**Culturally appropriate [mechanisms]:** Means/approaches for outreach to target groups that are in harmony with the customs, values, sensitivities, and ways of life of the target audience (Source: FSC 2014). In Uganda, the target groups are highly diverse and therefore culturally appropriate practices, mechanisms, etc. shall be identified at forest management unit level.

**Customary law:** Interrelated sets of customary rights may be recognized as customary law. In some jurisdictions, customary law is equivalent to statutory law, within its defined area of competence and may replace the statutory law for defined ethnic or other social groups. In some jurisdictions customary law complements statutory law and is applied in specified circumstances (Source: Based on N.L. Peluso and P. Vandergeest. 2001. Genealogies of the political forest and customary rights in Indonesia, Malaysia and Thailand, *Journal of Asian Studies* 60(3):761–812).

**Customary rights:** Rights which result from a long series of habitual or customary actions, constantly repeated, which have, by such repetition and by uninterrupted acquiescence, acquired the force of a law within a geographical or sociological unit (Source: FSC 1994).

**Dispute:** for the purpose of the IGIs, this is an expression of dissatisfaction by any person or organization presented as a complaint to *The Organization\**, relating to its management activities or its conformity with the FSC Principles and Criteria, where a response is expected (Source: based on FSC 2014. FSC-PRO-01-005 V3-0 Processing Appeals).

**Dispute of substantial duration:** Conflicts that continue for more than twice as long as the predefined timelines in the FSC System (this is, for more than 6 months after receiving the complaint, based on FSC-STD-20-001) (Source: FSC 2014).

**Dispute of substantial magnitude:** For the purpose of the International Generic Indicators, dispute of substantial magnitude is a conflict that involves one or more of the following:

- a. Affects the *legal\** or *customary rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** and *local communities\**;
- a. Where court has issued an injunction that affects management activities
- b. Where ownership and management rights of the resource is disputed
- b. Where the negative impact of management activities is of such a scale that it cannot be reversed or mitigated;
- c. Physical violence;
- d. Destruction of property;
- e. Presence of military bodies;
- f. Acts of intimidation against *forest\** workers and stakeholders.
- g. Where the safety of workers or local communities is threatened

(Source: Adapted from FSC 2014).

**Economic viability:** The capability of developing and surviving as a relatively independent social, economic or political unit. Economic viability may require but is not synonymous with profitability (Source: Based on WEBSTeA as provided on the website of the European Environment Agency).

**Ecosystem:** A dynamic complex of plant, animal and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment interacting as a functional unit (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity 1992, Article 2).

**Ecosystem function:** An intrinsic ecosystem characteristic related to the set of conditions and processes whereby an ecosystem maintains its integrity (such as primary productivity, food chain, and biogeochemical cycles). Ecosystem functions include such processes as decomposition, production, nutrient cycling, and fluxes of nutrients and energy. For FSC purposes, this definition includes ecological and evolutionary processes such as gene flow and disturbance regimes, regeneration cycles and ecological seral development (succession) stages. (Source: Based on R. Hassan, R. Scholes and N. Ash. 2005. Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Synthesis. The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment Series. Island Press, Washington DC; and R.F. Noss. 1990. Indicators for monitoring biodiversity: a hierarchical approach. *Conservation Biology* 4(4):355–364).

**Ecosystem services:** The benefits people obtain from ecosystems. These include

- (a) provisioning services such as food, forest products and water;
- (b) regulating services such as regulation of floods, drought, land degradation, air quality, climate and disease;
- (c) supporting services such as soil formation and nutrient cycling;
- (d) and cultural services and cultural values such as recreational, spiritual, religious and other non-material

benefits.

(Source: Based on R. Hassan, R. Scholes and N. Ash. 2005. Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Synthesis. The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment Series. Island Press, Washington DC).

**Endangered species:** Any species which is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range.

**Engaging or engagement:** The process by which *The Organization* communicates, consults and/or provides for the participation of interested and/or affected stakeholders ensuring that their concerns, desires, expectations, needs, rights and opportunities are considered in the establishment, implementation and updating of the management plan (Source: FSC 2011).

**Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA):** Systematic process used to identify potential environmental and social impacts of proposed projects, to evaluate alternative approaches, and to design and incorporate appropriate prevention, mitigation, management and monitoring measures (Source: based on Environmental impact assessment, guidelines for FAO field projects. Food and agriculture organization of the United Nations (FAO). Rome, 2011).

**Environmental values:** The following set of elements of the biophysical and human environment:

- a. ecosystem functions (including carbon sequestration and storage)
- b. biological diversity
- c. water resources
- d. soils
- e. atmosphere
- f. landscape values (including cultural and spiritual values).

The actual worth attributed to these elements depends on human and societal perceptions (Source: FSC 2011).

**Environmentally sensitive area:** An area of land that is particularly susceptible to damage by forestry operations and where operations are prohibited or restricted: for example, wetlands, watersheds, streamside buffer zones, conservation zones, recreation areas, areas near human settlements, sites of special ecological significance, habitats of rare or endangered species (Higman et al., 2002).

**Exotic species:** An introduced species not native or endemic to the area in question.

**Externalities:** The positive and negative impacts of activities on stakeholders that are not directly involved in those activities, or on a natural resource or the environment, which do not usually enter standard cost accounting systems, such that the market prices of the products of those activities do not reflect the full costs or benefits (Source: FSC 2011).

**Fair compensation:** Remuneration that is proportionate to the magnitude and type of services rendered by another party or of the harm that is attributable to the first party (Source: FSC 2014).

**Fertilizer:** Mineral or organic substances, most commonly N, P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> and K<sub>2</sub>O, which are applied to soil for the purpose of enhancing plant growth (Source: FSC 2014).

**Forest:** A tract of land dominated by trees (Source: FSC 2011. Derived from FSC Guidelines for Certification Bodies, Scope of Forest Certification, Section 2.1 first published in 1998, and revised as FSC-GUI-20-200 in 2005, and revised again in 2010 as FSC-DIR-20-007 FSC Directive on Forest Management Evaluations, ADVISE-20-007-01).



**Forest certification:** The process of verification by a body of proven independence that the management of a forest has reached a specified standard (Uganda Forestry Policy, 2001).

**Forest integrity:** The composition, dynamics, functions and structural attributes of a natural forest.

**Forest management/manager:** The people responsible for the operational management of the forest resource and of the enterprise, as well as the management system and structure, and the planning and field operations.

**Forest management unit (FMU):** A clearly defined forest area with mapped boundaries, managed by a single managerial body to a set of explicit objectives which are expressed in a self-contained multi-year management plan

**Formal and informal workers organization:** associations of *workers\**, whether recognized by law or by *The Organization\** or neither, which have the aim of promoting *workers\** rights and to represent *workers\** in dealings with *The Organization\** particularly regarding working conditions and compensation (Source: FSC 2014).

**Free, Prior, and Informed Consent:** A legal condition whereby a person or community can be said to have given consent to an action prior to its commencement, based upon a clear appreciation and understanding of the facts, implications and future consequences of that action, and the possession of all relevant facts at the time when consent is given. Free, prior and informed consent includes the right to grant, modify, withhold or withdraw approval (Source: Based on the Preliminary working paper on the principle of Free, Prior and Informed Consent of Indigenous Peoples (...) (E/CN.4/Sub.2/AC.4/2004/4 8 July 2004) of the 22nd Session of the United Nations Commission on Human Rights, Sub-commission on the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights, Working Group on Indigenous Populations, 19–23 July 2004).

**Gender equality:** Gender equality or gender equity means that women and men have equal conditions for realizing their full human rights and for contributing to, and benefiting from, economic, social, cultural and political development (Source: Adapted from FAO, IFAD and ILO workshop on 'Gaps, trends and current research in gender dimensions of agricultural and rural employment: differentiated pathways out of poverty', Rome, 31 March to 2 April 2009.).

**Genetically modified organisms:** An organism in which the genetic material has been altered in a way that does not occur naturally by mating and/or natural recombination. (Source: Based on FSC-POL-30-602 FSC Interpretation on GMO (Genetically Modified Organisms)).

**Genotype:** The genetic constitution of an organism (Source: FSC 2011).

**Habitat:** The place or type of site where an organism or population occurs (Source: Based on the Convention on Biological Diversity, Article 2).

**Habitat features:** *Forest\** stand attributes and structures, including but not limited to:

- a. Old commercial and non-commercial trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy;
- b. Trees with special ecological value;
- c. Vertical and horizontal complexity;
- d. Standing dead trees;
- e. Dead fallen wood;

- f. Forest openings attributable to natural disturbances;
- g. Nesting sites;
- h. Small wetlands, bogs, fens;
- i. Ponds;
- j. Areas for procreation;
- k. Areas for feeding and shelter, including seasonal cycles of breeding;
- l. Areas for migration;
- m. Areas for hibernation.

(Source: FSC 2014).

**High Conservation Value (HCV):** Any of the following values:

HCV1 - Species Diversity. Concentrations of biological diversity\* including endemic species, and rare, threatened or endangered\* species, that are significant at global, regional or national levels.

HCV 2 - Landscape-level ecosystems and mosaics. Intact forest landscapes and large landscape-level ecosystems\* and ecosystem mosaics that are significant at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.

HCV 3 - Ecosystems and habitats. Rare, threatened, or endangered ecosystems, habitats\* or refugia\*.

HCV 4 - Critical ecosystem services. Basic ecosystem services\* in critical situations, including protection of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

HCV 5 - Community needs. Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of local communities or indigenous peoples\* (for example for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water), identified through engagement with these communities or indigenous peoples.

HCV 6 - Cultural values. Sites, resources, habitats and landscapes\* of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of critical cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of local communities or indigenous peoples, identified through engagement with these local communities or indigenous peoples.

(Source: FSC 2011)

**High Conservation Value Areas:** Zones and physical spaces which possess and/or are needed for the existence and maintenance of identified *High Conservation Values*\* (Source: FSC2014).

**High grading:** High grading is a tree removal practice in which only the best quality, most valuable timber trees are removed, often without regenerating new tree seedlings or removing the remaining poor quality and suppressed understory trees and, in doing so, degrading the ecological health and commercial value of the forest. High grading stands as a counterpoint to sustainable resource management (Source: based on Glossary of Forest Management Terms. North Carolina Division of Forest Resources. March 2009).

**High Potential Impact Management Regime:** refers to the management unit where the following are applicable:

- Sawlog Felling Cycle  $\leq$ 30 years in natural forests; OR
- Sawlog harvesting  $>$ 60m<sup>3</sup>/ha over the rotation period in natural forests; OR
- Using chemicals; OR

- Using heavy machinery; OR
- Combining of any or all of the above with harvesting of IUCN red-listed species; OR
- Any combination or all of the activities above being carried out in one management unit

**High Potential Impact Organization:** An Organization where a High Potential Impact Regime is implemented

**Indigenous lands and territories:** The total environment of the lands, air, water, sea, sea-ice, flora and fauna, and other resources which indigenous peoples have traditionally owned or otherwise occupied or used. (*Draft Declaration of the Rights of Indigenous Peoples: Part VI*)

**Indigenous peoples:** People and groups of people that can be identified or characterized as follows:

- The key characteristic or criterion is self-identification as indigenous peoples at the individual level and acceptance by the community as their member
- Historical continuity with pre-colonial and/or pre-settler societies
- Strong link to territories and surrounding natural resources
- Distinct social, economic or political systems
- Distinct language, culture and beliefs
- Form non-dominant groups of society
- Resolve to maintain and reproduce their ancestral environments and systems as distinctive peoples and communities.

(Source: Adapted from United Nations Permanent Forum on Indigenous, Factsheet 'Who are indigenous peoples' October 2007; United Nations Development Group, 'Guidelines on Indigenous Peoples' Issues' United Nations 2009, United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples, 13 September 2007).

The Indigenous Peoples in Uganda include:

- (1) The Ik (also known as the Teuso) living in Mt Timu Central Forest Reserve (CFR), in Timu parish, Kalapata sub-county, Dodoth County, Kaabong District, and also in Mt. Morungole CFR in Kawalakol parish , Kapedo sub-county, Dodoth County in Kaabong District;
- (2) The Tepeth found in Mt. Moroto CFR, within Katikekile and Tapac sub-counties, Matheniko County, Moroto District;
- (3) The Benets (also known as the Ndorobos) - originally found in Mt. Elgon National Park (NP). Some of the Benets were resettled by Government on the 6,000 ha of land degazetted from the Park in 2000's, although some are reportedly not yet resettled and still within the NP. They are in Kwosir, Benet and Kitawoi sub-counties, Kween County of Kween District. They are also found in Kwoti parish of Kapchesombe subcounty, Kapchorwa District, and in Kapsekek parish of Chepkwasta sub-county of Bukwo District.
- (4) The Batwa, originally found in Bwindi NP, Mugahinga NP and Echuya CFR. In Kanungu District, they are found in Kayonza sub-county, especially in Mukono and Bujengwe parishes and Butagota Trading Centre. They are also found in Bulemba Parish of Mpungu subcounty, Kitariro Batwa Settlement in Kirima subcounty, and Kihembe Parish of Kaanyantorogo subcounty. Echuya CFR covers part of Kabale District and crosses into Kisoro District.

**Infrastructure:** In the context of forest management, roads, bridges, culverts, log landings, quarries, impoundments, buildings and other structures required in the course of implementing the *management plan*\* (Source: FSC 2014).

**Intellectual property:** Practices as well as knowledge, innovations and other creations of the mind. (Source: Based on the Convention on Biological Diversity, Article 8(j); and World Intellectual Property Organization. What is Intellectual Property? WIPO Publication No. 450(E). No Date.)

**Intensity:** A measure of the force, severity or strength of a management activity or other occurrence affecting the nature of the activity's impacts (Source: FSC 2011).

**Interested stakeholder:** Any person, group of persons, or entity that has shown an interest, or is known to have an interest, in the activities of a Management Unit. The following are examples of interested stakeholders.

- Conservation organizations, for example environmental NGOs
- Labor (rights) organizations, for example labor unions
- Human rights organizations, for example social NGOs
- Local development projects
- Local governments
- National government departments functioning in the region
- FSC National Offices
- Experts on particular issues, for example High Conservation Values

(Source: FSC 2011)

**Internationally accepted scientific protocol:** A predefined science-based procedure which is either published by an international scientific network or union, or referenced frequently in the international scientific literature (Source: FSC 2011).

**Invasive species:** Species that are rapidly expanding outside of their native range. Invasive species can alter ecological relationships among native species and can affect ecosystem function and human health (Source: Based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website).

**Lands and territories:** For the purposes of the Principles and Criteria these are lands or territories that indigenous peoples or local communities have traditionally owned, or customarily used or occupied, and where access to natural resources is vital to the sustainability of their cultures and livelihoods. (Source: Based on World Bank safeguard OP 4.10 Indigenous Peoples, section 16 (a). July 2005.)

**Landscape:** A geographical mosaic composed of interacting ecosystems resulting from the influence of geological, topographical, soil, climatic, biotic and human interactions in a given area.

**Landscape values:** Landscape values can be visualized as layers of human perceptions overlaid on the physical landscape. Some landscape values, like economic, recreation, subsistence value or visual quality are closely related to physical landscape attributes. Other landscape values such as intrinsic or spiritual value are more symbolic in character and are influenced more by individual perception or social construction than physical landscape attributes (Source: Based on website of the Landscape Value Institute).

**Legal:** In accordance with primary legislation (national or local laws) or secondary legislation (subsidiary regulations, decrees, orders, etc.). 'Legal' also includes rule-based decisions made by legally competent agencies where such decisions flow directly and logically from the laws and regulations. Decisions made by legally competent agencies may not be legal if they do not flow directly and logically from the laws and regulations and if they are not rule-based but use administrative discretion (Source: FSC 2011).

**Legally competent:** Mandated in law to perform a certain function (Source: FSC 2011).

**Legal registration:** National or local legal license or set of permissions to operate as an enterprise, with rights to buy and sell products and/or services commercially. The license or permissions can apply to an individual, a privately-owned enterprise or a publicly-owned corporate entity. The rights to buy and sell products and/or services do not carry the obligation to do so, so legal registration applies also to Organizations operating a Management Unit without sales of products or services; for example, for un-priced recreation or for conservation of biodiversity or habitat (Source: FSC 2011).

**Legal status:** The way in which the Management Unit is classified according to law. In terms of tenure, it means the category of tenure, such as communal land or leasehold or freehold or State land or government land, etc. If the Management Unit is being converted from one category to another (for example, from State land to communal indigenous land) the status includes the current position in the transition process. In terms of administration, legal status could mean that the land is owned by the nation as a whole, is administered on behalf of the nation by a government department, and is leased by a government Ministry to a private sector operator through a concession (Source: FSC 2011).

**Living wage:** The level of wages sufficient to meet the basic living needs of an average-sized Family in a particular economy (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website).

**Local communities:** Communities of any size that are in or adjacent to the Management Unit, and also those that are close enough to have a significant impact on the economy or the environmental values of the Management Unit or to have their economies, rights or environments significantly affected by the management activities or the biophysical aspects of the Management Unit (Source: FSC 2011).

**Local expert(s):** Include relevant District local government personnel, non-government organizations and consultants that are knowledgeable in the relevant field(s) of specialization.

**Local laws:** Includes all legal norms given by organisms of government whose jurisdiction is less than the national level, such as departmental, municipal and customary norms.

**Long term:** The time-scale of the forest owner or manager as manifested by the objectives of the management plan, the rate of harvesting, and the commitment to maintain permanent forest cover. The length of time involved will vary according to the context and ecological conditions, and will be a function of how long it takes a given ecosystem to recover its natural structure and composition following harvesting or disturbance, or to produce mature or primary conditions.

**Low Potential Impact Management Regime:** refers to the management unit where the following are applicable:

Harvesting of Non-IUCN red-listed NTFP species only; OR

Provision of ecosystem services; OR

Sawlog Felling Cycle  $\geq 30$  years in natural forests; AND

Sawlog Harvesting  $\leq 30\text{m}^3/\text{ha}$  over the rotation period in natural forests; OR

Any combination or all of the activities above being carried out in one management unit, AND

Not using heavy machinery; AND

Not using chemicals

**Low Potential Impact Organization:** An Organization where a Low Potential Impact Regime is implemented

**Management Objective:** Specific management goals, practices, outcomes, and approaches established to achieve the requirements of this standard (Source: FSC 2014).

**Management plan:** The collection of documents, reports, records and maps that describe, justify and regulate the activities carried out by any manager, staff or organization within or in relation to the Management Unit, including statements of objectives and policies (Source:FSC 2011).

**Management Plan Monitoring:** Follow up and oversight procedures for the purpose of evaluating the achievement of the management *objectives*\*. The results of the monitoring activities are utilized in the implementation of *adaptive management*\* (Source: FSC 2014).

**Management Unit:** A spatial area or areas submitted for FSC certification with clearly defined boundaries managed to a set of explicit long term management objectives which are expressed in a management plan. This area or areas include(s):

- all facilities and area(s) within or adjacent to this spatial area or areas under legal title or management control of, or operated by or on behalf of The Organization, for the purpose of contributing to the management objectives; and
- all facilities and area(s) outside, and not adjacent to this spatial area or areas and operated by or on behalf of The Organization, solely for the purpose of contributing to the management objectives.

(Source: FSC 2011).

**Managerial control:** Responsibility of the kind defined for corporate directors of commercial enterprises in national commercial law, and treated by FSC as applicable also to public sector organizations (Source: FSC 2011).

**National laws:** The whole suite of primary and secondary laws (acts, ordinances, statutes, decrees), which is applicable to a national territory, as well as secondary regulations, and tertiary administrative procedures (rules / requirements) that derive their authority directly and explicitly from these primary and secondary laws (Source: FSC 2011).

**Native species:** Species, subspecies, or lower taxon, occurring within its natural range (pastor present) and dispersal potential (that is, within the range it occupies naturally or could occupy without direct or indirect introduction or care by humans) (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD). Invasive Alien Species Programme. Glossary of Terms as provided on CBD website).

**Natural conditions/native ecosystem:** For the purposes of the Principles and Criteria and any applications of restoration techniques, terms such as 'more natural conditions', 'native ecosystem' provide for managing sites to favor or restore native species and associations of native species that are typical of the locality, and for

managing these associations and other environmental values so that they form ecosystems typical of the locality. Further guidelines may be provided in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards (Source: FSC 2011).

**Natural cycles:** Nutrient and mineral cycling as a result of interactions between soils, water, plants, and animals in forest environments that affect the ecological productivity of a given site.

**Natural forest:** A forest area with many of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems, such as complexity, structure and biological diversity, including soil characteristics, flora and fauna, in which all or almost all the trees are native species, not classified as plantations. 'Natural forest' includes the following categories.

- Forest affected by harvesting or other disturbances, in which trees are being or have been regenerated by a combination of natural and artificial regeneration with species typical of natural forests in that site, and where many of the above-ground and belowground characteristics of the natural forest are still present. In boreal and north temperate forests which are naturally composed of only one or few tree species, a combination of natural and artificial regeneration to regenerate forest of the same native species, with most of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems of that site, is not by itself considered as conversion to plantations.
- Natural forests which are maintained by traditional silvicultural practices including natural or assisted natural regeneration.
- Well-developed secondary or colonizing forest of native species which has regenerated in non-forest areas.
- The definition of 'natural forest' may include areas described as wooded ecosystems, woodland and savanna.

The description of natural forests and their principal characteristics and key elements may be further defined in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards, with appropriate descriptions or examples.

Natural forest does not include land which is not dominated by trees, was previously not forest, and which does not yet contain many of the characteristics and elements of native ecosystems. Young regeneration may be considered as natural forest after some years of ecological progression. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may indicate when such areas may be excised from the Management Unit, should be restored towards more natural conditions, or may be converted to other land uses.

FSC has not developed quantitative thresholds between different categories of forests in terms of area, density, height, etc. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may provide such thresholds and other guidelines, with appropriate descriptions or examples. Pending such guidance, areas dominated by trees, mainly of native species, may be considered as natural forest. Thresholds and guidelines may cover areas such as:

- Other vegetation types and non-forest communities and ecosystems included in the Management Unit, including grassland, bushland, wetlands, and open woodlands.
- Very young pioneer or colonizing regeneration in a primary succession on new open sites or abandoned farmland, which does not yet contain many of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems. This may be considered as natural forest through ecological progression after the passage of years.
- Young natural regeneration growing in natural forest areas may be considered as natural forest, even after logging, clear-felling or other disturbances, since many of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems remain, above-ground and below-ground.
- Areas where deforestation and forest degradation have been so severe that they are no longer 'dominated by trees' may be considered as non-forest, when they have very few of the principal above-

ground and below-ground characteristics and key elements of natural forests. Such extreme degradation is typically the result of combinations of repeated and excessively heavy logging, grazing, farming, fuelwood collection, hunting, fire, erosion, mining, settlements, infrastructure, etc. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may help to decide when such areas should be excised from the Management Unit, should be restored towards more natural conditions, or may be converted to other land uses.

(Source: FSC 2011).

**Natural Hazards:** disturbances that can present risks to social and *environmental values\** in the *Management Unit\** but that may also comprise important ecosystem functions; examples include drought, flood, fire, landslide, storm, avalanche, etc. (Source: FSC 2014).

**Non-compliance:** Any failure to meet the threshold requirement(s) of an indicator.

**Non-Timber Forest Products (NTFPs):** All forest products except timber, including other materials obtained from trees such as resins and leaves, as well as any other plant and animal products.

**Objective:** The basic purpose laid down by The Organization for the forest enterprise, including the decision of policy and the choice of means for attaining the purpose (Source: Based on F.C. Osmaston. 1968. The Management of Forests. Hafner, New York; and D.R. Johnston, A.J. Grayson and R.T. Bradley. 1967. Forest Planning. Faber & Faber, London).

**Obligatory code of practice:** A manual or handbook or other source of technical instruction which The Organization must implement by law (Source: FSC 2011).

**Occupational accident:** An occurrence arising out of, or in the course of, work which results in fatal or non-fatal injury (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website).

**Occupational disease:** Any disease contracted as a result of an exposure to risk factors arising from work activity (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website).

**Occupational injuries:** Any personal injury, disease or death resulting from an occupational accident (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website).

**Organism:** Any biological entity capable of replication or of transferring genetic material (Source: Council Directive 90/220/EEC).

**The Organization:** The person or entity holding or applying for certification and therefore responsible for demonstrating compliance with the requirements upon which FSC certification is based (Source: FSC 2011).

**Other forest types:** Forest areas that do not fit the criteria for plantation or natural forests and which are defined more specifically by FSC-approved national and regional standards of forest stewardship.

**Permanent forest estate (PFE):** Land set aside for forestry activities in perpetuity (Uganda Forestry Policy, 2001).

**Personal Protective Equipment / Gear:** Suitable and appropriate personal protective equipment and clothing



to protect users from risk or injury.

**Pest:** Organisms, which are harmful or perceived as harmful and as prejudicing the achievement of management goals. Some pests, especially introduced exotics, may also pose serious ecological threats, and suppression may be recommended. They include animal pests, plant weeds, pathogenic fungi and other micro-organisms.

**Pesticide:** Any substance or preparation prepared or used in protecting plants or wood or other plant products from pests; in controlling pests; or in rendering such pests harmless. This definition includes insecticides, rodenticides, acaricides, molluscicides, larvacides, fungicides and herbicides (Source: FSC-POL-30-001 FSC Pesticides Policy (2005)).

**Plantation:** A forest area established by planting or sowing with using either alien or native species, often with one or few species, regular spacing and even ages, and which lacks most of the principal characteristics and key elements of natural forests. The description of plantations may be further defined in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards, with appropriate descriptions or examples, such as:

- Areas which would initially have complied with this definition of 'plantation' but which, after the passage of years, contain many or most of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems, may be classified as natural forests.
- Plantations managed to restore and enhance biological and habitat diversity, structural complexity and ecosystem functionality may, after the passage of years, be classified as natural forests.
- Boreal and north temperate forests which are naturally composed of only one or few tree species, in which a combination of natural and artificial regeneration is used to regenerate forest of the same native species, with most of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems of that site, may be considered as natural forest, and this regeneration is not by itself considered as conversion to plantations. (Source: FSC 2011)

**Precautionary approach:** An approach requiring that when the available information indicates that management activities pose a threat of severe or irreversible damage to the environment or a threat to human welfare, The Organization will take explicit and effective measures to prevent the damage and avoid the risks to welfare, even when the scientific information is incomplete or inconclusive, and when the vulnerability and sensitivity of environmental values are uncertain (Source: Based on Principle 15 of Rio Declaration on Environment and Development, 1992, and Wingspread Statement on the Precautionary Principle of the Wingspread Conference, 23–25 January 1998).

**Precautionary approach:** An approach requiring that when the available information indicates that management activities pose a threat of severe or irreversible damage to the environment or a threat to human welfare, The Organization will take explicit and effective measures to prevent the damage and avoid the risks to welfare, even when the scientific information is incomplete or inconclusive, and when the vulnerability and sensitivity of environmental values are uncertain (Source: Based on Principle 15 of Rio Declaration on Environment and Development, 1992, and Wingspread Statement on the Precautionary Principle of the Wingspread Conference, 23–25 January 1998).

**Pre-harvest [condition]:** The diversity, composition, and structure of the *forest\** or plantation prior to felling timber and appurtenant activities such as road building (Source: FSC 2014).

**Principle:** An essential rule or element; in FSC's case, of forest stewardship.

**Production forest:** A forest which is available for wood supply and other uses.

**Protection:** See definition of Conservation.

**Protection Area:** See definition of Conservation Zone.

**Publicly available:** In a manner accessible to or observable by people generally (Source: Collins English Dictionary, 2003 Edition).

**Rare species:** Species that are uncommon or scarce, but not classified as threatened. These species are located in geographically restricted areas or specific habitats, or are scantily scattered on a large scale. They are approximately equivalent to the IUCN (2001) category of Near Threatened (NT), including species that are close to qualifying for, or are likely to qualify for, a threatened category in the near future. They are also approximately equivalent to imperiled species (Source: Based on IUCN. (2001). IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria: Version 3.1. IUCN Species Survival Commission. IUCN. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK).

**Ratified:** The process by which an international law, covenant or agreement (including multilateral environmental agreement) is legally approved by a national legislature or equivalent legal mechanism, such that the international law, covenant or agreement becomes automatically part of national law or sets in motion the development of national law to give the same legal effect (Source: FSC 2011).

**Reasonable:** Judged to be fair or appropriate to the circumstances or purposes, based on general experience (Source: Shorter Oxford English Dictionary).

**Reduced impact harvesting:** Harvesting (including logging) using techniques to reduce the impact on the residual stand (Source: Based on Guidelines for the Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity in Tropical Timber Production Forests, IUCN 2006).

**Refugia:** An isolated area where extensive changes, typically due to changing climate or by disturbances such as those caused by humans, have not occurred and where plants and animals typical of a region may survive (Source: Glen Canyon Dam, Adaptive Management Program Glossary as provided on website of Glen Canyon Dam website).

**Representative Sample Areas:** Portions of the *Management Unit*\* delineated for the purpose of conserving or restoring viable examples of an ecosystem that would naturally occur in that geographical region (Source: FSC 2014).

**Resilience:** The ability of a system to maintain key functions and processes in the face of stresses or pressures by either resisting or adapting to change. Resilience can be applied to both ecological systems and social systems (Source: IUCN World Commission on Protected Areas (IUCN-WCPA). 2008. Establishing Marine Protected Area Networks – Making it Happen. Washington D.C.: IUCN-WCPA National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and The Nature Conservancy.)

**Responsible body:** a body designated to manage, maintain and control a forest reserve, a community forest under the National Forestry and Tree Planting Act (2003), and in case of a private forest, the owner or person in charge of the forest.

**Restore / Restoration:** These words are used in different senses according to the context and in everyday speech. In some cases 'restore' means to repair the damage done to environmental values that resulted from management activities or other causes. In other cases 'restore' means the formation of more natural conditions in sites which have been heavily degraded or converted to other land uses. In the Principles and Criteria, the

word 'restore' is not used to imply the recreation of any particular previous, pre-historic, pre-industrial or other pre-existing ecosystem (Source: FSC2011)

The Organization is not necessarily obliged to restore those environmental values that have been affected by factors beyond the control of The Organization, for example by natural disasters, by climate change, or by the legally authorized activities of third parties, such as public infrastructure, mining, hunting or settlement. FSC-POL-20-003 The Excision of Areas from the Scope of Certification describes the processes by which such areas may be excised from the area certified, when appropriate.

The Organization is also not obliged to restore environmental values that may have existed at some time in the historic or pre-historic past, or that have been negatively affected by previous owners or organizations. However, The Organization is expected to take reasonable measures to mitigate, control and prevent environmental degradation which is continuing in the Management Unit as a result of such previous impacts.

**Riparian zone:** Interface between land and a water body, and the vegetation associated to it (Source: FSC 2014).

**Risk:** The probability of an unacceptable negative impact arising from any activity in the Management Unit combined with its seriousness in terms of consequences (Source: FSC2011).

**Scale:** A measure of the extent to which a management activity or event affects an environmental value or a management unit, in time or space. An activity with a small or low spatial scale affects only a small proportion of the forest each year, an activity with a small or low temporal scale occurs only at long intervals (Source: FSC 2011).

**Scale, intensity and risk:** See individual definitions of the terms 'scale', 'intensity', and 'risk'.

**Shall:** Indicates a requirement of the standard.

**Shall not:** Indicates a prohibition.

**Should/ and should not:** Indicate a recommendation. (Source: Based on ISO Guide 2, General Vocabulary section 7.1; and ISO/IEC Directives Part 2, Fifth edition. 2004. Annex H, Verbal forms for the expression of provisions).

**Significant:** For the purposes of Principal 9, HCVs 1, 2 and 6 there are three main forms of recognizing significance.

- A designation, classification or recognized conservation status, assigned by an international agency such as IUCN or Birdlife International.
- A designation by national or regional authorities, or by a responsible national conservation organization, on the basis of its concentration of biodiversity.
- A voluntary recognition by the manager, owner or Organization, on the basis of available information, or of the known or suspected presence of a significant biodiversity concentration, even when not officially designated by other agencies.

Any one of these forms will justify designation as HCVs 1, 2 and 6. Many regions of the world have received recognition for their biodiversity importance, measured in many different ways. Existing maps and classifications of priority areas for biodiversity conservation play an essential role in identifying the potential presence of HCVs 1, 2 and 6 (Source: FSC 2011).

**Silviculture:** The art and science of controlling the establishment, growth, composition, health and quality of forests and woodlands to meet the targeted diverse needs and values of landowners and society on a sustainable basis (Source: Nieuwenhuis, M. 2000. Terminology of Forest Management. IUFRO World Series Vol.9. IUFRO 4.04.07 SilvaPlan and SilvaVoc).

**SLIMF (Small or low intensity managed forest):**

A forest management unit is classed as SLIMF units when:

- (i) When the total area is 1000 ha or smaller, OR
- (ii) the rate of harvesting is less than 20% of the mean annual increment (MAI)<sup>2</sup> within the total production forest area of the unit, AND
- (iii) EITHER the annual harvest from the total production forest area is less than 5000 cubic metres,
- (iv) OR the average annual harvest from the total production forest is less than 5,000 m<sup>3</sup> / year during the period of validity of the certificate as verified by harvest reports and surveillance audits.

**Stakeholder:** See definitions for ‘affected stakeholder’ and ‘interested stakeholder’.

**Standard Potential Impact Management Regime:** refers to the management unit where the following are applicable:

- Harvesting includes IUCN red-listed NTFP species; **OR**
- Provision of ecosystem services; **OR**
- Sawlog Felling Cycle  $\geq 30$  years in natural forests; **AND**
- Sawlog Harvesting  $\leq 60$  m<sup>3</sup>/ha over the rotation period in natural forests; **OR**
- Using either chemicals or heavy machinery, but not both; **OR**
- Any combination or all of the activities above being carried out in one management unit

**Standard Potential Impact Organization:** An Organization where a Standard Potential Impact Regime is implemented

**Statutory law or statute law:** The body of law contained in Acts of Parliament(national legislature) (Source: Oxford Dictionary of Law).

**Succession:** Progressive changes in species composition and forest community structure caused by natural processes (nonhuman) over time.

**Tenure:** Socially defined agreements held by individuals or groups, recognized by legal statutes or customary practice, regarding the ‘bundle of rights and duties’ of ownership, holding, access and/or usage of a particular land unit or the associated resources there within (such as individual trees, plant species, water, minerals, etc.)(Source: World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website).

**Threat:** An indication or warning of impending or likely damage or negative impacts(Source: Based on Oxford English Dictionary).

**Threatened species:** Species that meet the IUCN (2001) criteria for Vulnerable (VU), Endangered (EN) or Critically Endangered (CR), and are facing a high, very high or extremely high risk of extinction in the wild. These categories may be re-interpreted for FSC purposes according to official national classifications (which have legal significance) and to local conditions and population densities (which should affect decisions about appropriate conservation measures) (Source: Based on IUCN. (2001). IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria: Version 3.1. IUCN Species Survival Commission. IUCN. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK.).

**Traditional peoples:** Traditional peoples are social groups or peoples who do not self-identify as indigenous and who affirm rights to their lands, forests and other resources based on long established custom or traditional occupation and use (Source: Forest Peoples Programme (Marcus Colchester, 7 October 2009)).

**Timber harvesting rate:** The actual harvest levels executed on the *Management Unit\**, tracked by either volume (e.g., cubic meters or board feet) or area (e.g., hectares or acres) metrics for the purpose of comparison with calculated (maximum) allowable harvest rates (Source: FSC 2014).

**Timely manner:** As promptly as circumstances reasonably allow; not intentionally postponed by *The Organization\**; in compliance with applicable laws, contracts, licenses or invoices (Source: FSC 2014).

**Traditional Knowledge:** Information, know-how, skills and practices that are developed, sustained and passed on from generation to generation within a community, often forming part of its cultural or spiritual identity (Source: based on the definition by the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO). Glossary definition as provided under Policy /Traditional Knowledge on the WIPO website).

**Traditional peoples:** Traditional peoples are social groups or peoples who do not self-identify as indigenous and who affirm rights to their lands, forests and other resources based on long established custom or traditional occupation and use (Source: Forest Peoples Programme (Marcus Colchester, 7 October 2009)).

**Uphold:** To acknowledge, respect, sustain and support (Source: FSC 2011).

**Use rights:** Rights for the use of resources of the Management Unit that can be defined by local custom, mutual agreements, or prescribed by other entities holding access rights. These rights may restrict the use of particular resources to specific levels of consumption or particular harvesting techniques (Source: FSC 2011).

**Verifiable targets:** Specific goals, such as desired future forest conditions, established to measure progress towards the achievement of each of the *management objectives\**. These goals are expressed as clear outcomes, such that their attainment can be verified and it is possible to determine whether they have been accomplished or not (Source: FSC 2014).

**Very Limited portion:** The area affected shall not exceed 0.5% of the area of the *Management Unit\** in any one year, nor affect a total of more than 5% of the area of the *Management Unit\** (Source: based on FSC 2009. FSC-STD-01-002 V1-0 FSC Glossary of Terms).

**Waste materials:** unusable or unwanted substances or by-products, such as:

- a. Hazardous waste, including chemical waste and batteries;
- b. Containers;
- c. Motor and other fuels and oils;
- d. Rubbish including metals, plastics and paper; and
- e. Abandoned buildings, machinery and equipment.

(Source: FSC 2014)

**Water bodies (including water courses):** Seasonal, temporary, and permanent brooks, creeks, streams, rivers, ponds, and lakes. Water bodies include riparian or wetland systems, lakes, swamps, bogs and springs (Source: FSC 2014).

**Workers:** All employed persons including public employees as well as 'self-employed' persons. This includes part-time and seasonal employees of all ranks and categories, including laborers, administrators, supervisors, executives, contractor employees as well as self Employed contractors and sub-contractors (Source: ILO Convention C155 Occupational Safety and Health Convention, 1981).